



Document Identifier: DSP0263

Date: 2016-03-22

Version: 2.0.0d

Cloud Infrastructure Management Interface (CIMI) Model and RESTful HTTP-based Protocol

An Interface for Managing Cloud Infrastructure

Information for Work-in-Progress version:

IMPORTANT: This document is not a standard. It does not necessarily reflect the views of the DMTF or its members. Because this document is a Work in Progress, this document may still change, perhaps profoundly and without notice. This document is available for public review and comment until superseded.

Provide any comments through the DMTF Feedback Portal:

<http://www.dmtf.org/standards/feedback>

Supersedes: 1.0.1

Document Class: Normative

Document Status: Work in Progress

Document Language: en-US

Copyright Notice

Copyright © 2016 Distributed Management Task Force, Inc. (DMTF). All rights reserved.

DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems management and interoperability. Members and non-members may reproduce DMTF specifications and documents, provided that correct attribution is given. As DMTF specifications may be revised from time to time, the particular version and release date should always be noted.

Implementation of certain elements of this standard or proposed standard may be subject to third party patent rights, including provisional patent rights (herein "patent rights"). DMTF makes no representations to users of the standard as to the existence of such rights, and is not responsible to recognize, disclose, or identify any or all such third party patent right, owners or claimants, nor for any incomplete or inaccurate identification or disclosure of such rights, owners or claimants. DMTF shall have no liability to any party, in any manner or circumstance, under any legal theory whatsoever, for failure to recognize, disclose, or identify any such third party patent rights, or for such party's reliance on the standard or incorporation thereof in its product, protocols or testing procedures. DMTF shall have no liability to any party implementing such standard, whether such implementation is foreseeable or not, nor to any patent owner or claimant, and shall have no liability or responsibility for costs or losses incurred if a standard is withdrawn or modified after publication, and shall be indemnified and held harmless by any party implementing the standard from any and all claims of infringement by a patent owner for such implementations.

For information about patents held by third-parties which have notified the DMTF that, in their opinion, such patent may relate to or impact implementations of DMTF standards, visit <http://www.dmtf.org/about/policies/disclosures.php>.

CONTENTS

35	Foreword	7
36	1 Scope	9
37	1.1 Document structure	9
38	1.2 Document versioning scheme	9
39	1.3 Typographical conventions	9
40	2 Normative references	10
41	3 Terms and definitions	12
42	4 HTTP-based protocol	14
43	4.1 Introduction	14
44	4.1.1 Protocol evolution and client expectations	14
45	4.1.2 XML namespaces	15
46	4.1.3 URI space	15
47	4.1.4 Media types.....	15
48	4.1.5 Request headers.....	16
49	4.1.6 Request query parameters	16
50	4.1.7 Response headers.....	21
51	4.2 Protocol operations	22
52	4.2.1 Common CRUD operations	23
53	4.2.2 Error handling	29
54	4.3 OVF support.....	29
55	5 Model.....	30
56	5.1 Extensibility	30
57	5.2 Identifiers	30
58	5.3 Attribute constraints	31
59	5.4 Serialization of Resources	32
60	5.5 Data types and their serialization.....	32
61	5.5.1 boolean	32
62	5.5.2 dateTime	32
63	5.5.3 duration	33
64	5.5.4 integer	33
65	5.5.5 string	33
66	5.5.6 ref	33
67	5.5.7 map	34
68	5.5.8 structure	34
69	5.5.9 byte[]	35
70	5.5.10 URI.....	35
71	5.5.11 Array	35
72	5.5.12 Collection	37
73	5.5.13 "Any" type	42
74	5.5.14 valueScope	42
75	5.5.15 Empty attribute values	45
76	5.6 Units	45
77	5.7 Resources	45
78	5.7.1 Common Resource attributes	45
79	5.8 Operations	47
80	5.9 Alternative model formats	48
81	5.10 Relationships between Resources	48
82	5.10.1 Referencing across Resources.....	48
83	5.10.2 Composition Relationship between Resources	48
84	5.11 Resource Metadata.....	49
85	5.11.1 Capabilities	54
86	5.11.2 ResourceMetadataCollection Resource	58

87	5.12	Cloud Entry Point	59
88	5.12.1	Operations	64
89	5.13	System Resources and relationships	64
90	5.13.1	System	64
91	5.13.2	SystemCollection Resource	68
92	5.13.3	SystemService Resource	69
93	5.13.4	SystemTemplate Resource	73
94	5.13.5	SystemTemplateCollection Resource	77
95	5.13.6	Service-specific Descriptor attributes	79
96	5.14	Machine Resources and relationships	79
97	5.14.1	Machine	79
98	5.14.2	MachineCollection Resource	89
99	5.14.3	MachineTemplate	90
100	5.14.4	MachineTemplateCollection Resource	92
101	5.14.5	MachineConfiguration Resource	92
102	5.14.6	MachineConfigurationCollection Resource	93
103	5.14.7	MachineImage Resource	93
104	5.14.8	MachineImageCollection Resource	95
105	5.14.9	Credential Resource	95
106	5.14.10	CredentialCollection Resource	96
107	5.14.11	CredentialTemplate Resource	96
108	5.14.12	CredentialTemplateCollection Resource	96
109	5.15	Volume Resources and relationships	97
110	5.15.1	Volume	97
111	5.15.2	VolumeCollection Resource	99
112	5.15.3	VolumeTemplate Resource	99
113	5.15.4	VolumeTemplateCollection Resource	100
114	5.15.5	VolumeConfiguration Resource	100
115	5.15.6	VolumeConfigurationCollection Resource	101
116	5.15.7	VolumeImage Resource	101
117	5.15.8	VolumeImageCollection Resource	102
118	5.16	Network Resources and relationships	102
119	5.16.1	Network	103
120	5.16.2	NetworkCollection Resource	106
121	5.16.3	NetworkTemplate Resource	106
122	5.16.4	NetworkTemplateCollection Resource	107
123	5.16.5	Segments	107
124	5.16.6	ProtocolSegmentCollection Resource	111
125	5.16.7	ProtocolSegmentTemplate Resource	111
126	5.16.8	ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection Resource	113
127	5.16.9	Endpoints	113
128	5.16.10	ProtocolEndpointCollection Resource	117
129	5.16.11	ProtocolEndpointTemplate Resource	117
130	5.16.12	ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection Resource	118
131	5.16.13	Interfaces	119
132	5.16.14	NetworkInterfaceCollection Resource	121
133	5.16.15	NetworkInterfaceTemplate Resource	122
134	5.16.16	NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection Resource	123
135	5.16.17	Services	123
136	5.16.18	NetworkServiceCollection Resource	126
137	5.16.19	NetworkServiceTemplate Resource	127
138	5.16.20	NetworkServiceTemplateCollection Resource	128
139	5.16.21	Policies	128
140	5.17	Monitoring Resources and relationships	128
141	5.17.1	Job Resource	128
142	5.17.2	JobCollection Resource	131

143	5.17.3 Meter Resource	131
144	5.17.4 MeterCollection Resource	134
145	5.17.5 MeterTemplate Resource	134
146	5.17.6 MeterTemplateCollection Resource	135
147	5.17.7 MeterConfiguration Resource	135
148	5.17.8 EventLog Resource	136
149	5.17.9 MeterConfigurationCollection Resource	136
150	5.17.10 MeterConfigurationCollection Resource	136
151	5.17.11 EventLogCollection Resource	138
152	5.17.12 EventLogTemplate Resource	138
153	5.17.13 EventLogTemplateCollection Resource	138
154	5.17.14 Event Resource	138
155	6 Security considerations	142
156	7 Conformance.....	143
157	7.1 Minimal Conformance Clause.....	143
158	ANNEX A OVF support in CIMI	144
159	ANNEX B XML Schema	146
160	ANNEX C Change log.....	147
161	Bibliography	150
162		

163 Tables

164	Table 1 – XML namespaces	15
165	Table 2 – Named structure.....	34
166	Table 3 – Converting a relative URI to an absolute URI.....	35
167	Table 4 – Numerical equivalents for attributes.....	45
168	Table 5 – Common attributes.....	45
169	Table 6 – ResourceMetadata attributes	49
170	Table 7 – Capability URIs	54
171	Table 8 – CloudEntryPoint attributes	59
172	Table 9 – System attributes	64
173	Table 10 - SystemService attributes	69
174	Table 11 – SystemService attributes for HighReliability service.....	70
175	Table 12 – RecoverableMachine accessory attributes	71
176	Table 13 – SystemService attributes for DisasterRecovery service	72
177	Table 14 – SystemTemplate attributes	74
178	Table 15 – Additional parameters for HighReliability service	79
179	Table 16 – Machine attributes.....	79
180	Table 17 – Disk attributes	81
181	Table 18 – locatedVolume accessory attributes.....	82
182	Table 19 – MachineTemplate attributes.....	90
183	Table 20 – MachineConfiguration attributes	92
184	Table 21 – MachineImage attributes.....	94
185	Table 22 – Credential attributes	95
186	Table 23 – UserName/Password attributes	96
187	Table 24 – Public key attributes	96
188	Table 25 – CredentialTemplate attributes.....	96
189	Table 26 – Volume attributes	97
190	Table 27 – VolumeTemplate attributes	100

191	Table 28 – VolumeConfiguration attributes.....	101
192	Table 29 – VolumeImage attributes	101
193	Table 30 – Network attributes	103
194	Table 31 – NetworkTemplate attributes	106
195	Table 32 – ProtocolSegment attributes.....	108
196	Table 33 - IPv6 ProtocolSegment parameters.....	108
197	Table 34 – IPv4 ProtocolSegment parameters	109
198	Table 35 – Ethernet ProtocolSegment parameters	109
199	Table 36 – ProtocolSegmentTemplate attributes	112
200	Table 37 – ProtocolEndpoint attributes.....	113
201	Table 38 - IPv6 ProtocolEndpoint parameters	114
202	Table 39 – IPv4 ProtocolEndpoint parameters	114
203	Table 40 – Ethernet ProtocolEndpoint parameters.....	115
204	Table 41 – ProtocolEndpointTemplate attributes.....	117
205	Table 42 – NetworkInterface attributes	119
206	Table 43 – NetworkInterfaceTemplate attributes	122
207	Table 44 – NetworkService attributes	123
208	Table 45 – NetworkServiceTemplate attributes	127
209	Table 46 – Job attributes.....	129
210	Table 47 – Meter attributes	131
211	Table 48 – Sample attributes	132
212	Table 49 – MeterTemplate attributes	134
213	Table 50 – MeterConfiguration attributes.....	135
214	Table 51 – aspect URIs.....	136
215	Table 52 – EventLog attributes	137
216	Table 53 – EventLogTemplate attributes	138
217	Table 54 – Event attributes	139
218	Table 55 – type URIs	140
219		
220		

221

Foreword

222
223
224

The *Cloud Infrastructure Management Interface (CIMI) Model and RESTful HTTP-based Protocol* specification (DSP0263) was prepared by the DMTF Cloud Management Working Group. It defines a logical model for the management of resources within the Infrastructure as a Service domain.

225
226

DMTF is a not-for-profit association of industry members dedicated to promoting enterprise and systems management and interoperability.

227 Acknowledgments

228 The DMTF acknowledges the following individuals for their contributions to this document:

229 Editors (present and past):

- 230 • Jacques Durand – Fujitsu
- 231 • Marios Andreou – Red Hat (previous)
- 232 • Doug Davis – IBM (previous)
- 233 • Gilbert Pilz – Oracle (previous)

234 Contributors:

- 235 • Ghazanfar Ali – ZTE Corporation
- 236 • Marios Andreou – Red Hat
- 237 • Keith Bankston – Microsoft Corporation
- 238 • Winston Bumpus – VMware Inc.
- 239 • Nathan Burkhart – Microsoft Corporation
- 240 • Mark Carlson – Oracle
- 241 • Steve Carter – Novell
- 242 • Junsheng Chu – ZTE Corporation
- 243 • Josh Cohen – Microsoft Corporation
- 244 • Derek Coleman – Hewlett-Packard Company
- 245 • John Crandall – Brocade Communications Systems
- 246 • Doug Davis – IBM
- 247 • Jim Davis – WBEM Solutions
- 248 • Fernando de la Iglesia – Telefónica
- 249 • Hiroshi Dempo – NEC Corporation
- 250 • Jacques Durand – Fujitsu
- 251 • Yigal Edery – Microsoft Corporation
- 252 • George Ericson – EMC
- 253 • Colleen Evans – Microsoft Corporation
- 254 • Norbert Floeren – Ericsson AB
- 255 • Robert Freund – Hitachi, Ltd.
- 256 • Fermín Galán – Telefónica
- 257 • Krishnan Gopalan – Microsoft Corporation
- 258 • Kazunori Iwasa – Fujitsu
- 259 • Mark Johnson – IBM
- 260 • Bhumip Khasnabish – ZTE Corporation
- 261 • Dies Köper – Fujitsu
- 262 • Vincent Kowalski – BMC Software
- 263 • Ruby Krishnaswamy – France Telecom Group
- 264 • Lawrence Lamers – VMware Inc.
- 265 • Paul Lipton – CA Technologies
- 266 • James Livingston – NEC Corporation
- 267 • Vince Lubsey – Virtustream Inc.

- 268 • David Lutterkort – Red Hat
- 269 • Fred Maciel – Hitachi, Ltd.
- 270 • Andreas Maier – IBM
- 271 • Ashok Malhotra – Oracle
- 272 • Arturo Martin de Nicolas - Ericsson
- 273 • Jeff Mischkinsky – Oracle
- 274 • Jesus Molina – Fujitsu
- 275 • Efraim Moscovich – CA Technologies
- 276 • Bryan Murray – Hewlett-Packard Company
- 277 • Steven Neely – Cisco
- 278 • Ryuichi Ogawa – NEC Corporation
- 279 • John Parchem– Microsoft Corporation
- 280 • Shishir Pardikar – Citrix Systems Inc.
- 281 • Miguel Peñalvo – Telefónica
- 282 • Gilbert Pilz – Oracle
- 283 • Alvaro Polo – Telefónica
- 284 • Enrico Ronco – Telecom Italia
- 285 • Federico Rossini – Telecom Italia
- 286 • Matthew Rutkowski – IBM
- 287 • Tom Rutt – Fujitsu
- 288 • Hemal Shah – Broadcom
- 289 • Nihar Shah – Microsoft Corporation
- 290 • Alan Sill – Texas Tech University
- 291 • Zhexuan Song – Huawei
- 292 • Marvin Waschke – CA Technologies
- 293 • Eric Wells – Hitachi, Ltd.
- 294 • Jeff Wheeler – Huawei
- 295 • Maarten Wiggers – Fujitsu
- 296 • Daniel Wilson – Ericsson AB
- 297 • Steve Winkler – SAP AG
- 298 • Jack Yu – Oracle
- 299 • Aaron Zhang – Huawei
- 300 • HengLiang Zhang – Huawei
- 301

Cloud Infrastructure Management Interface (CIMI) Model and RESTful HTTP-based Protocol

1 Scope

This specification describes the model and protocol for management interactions between a cloud Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS) Provider and the Consumers of an IaaS service. The basic resources of IaaS (machines, storage, and networks) are modeled with the goal of providing Consumer management access to an implementation of IaaS and facilitating portability between cloud implementations that support the specification. This document specifies a Representational State Transfer (REST)-style protocol using HTTP. However, the underlying model is not specific to HTTP, and it is possible to map it to other protocols as well.

CIMI addresses the management of the life cycle of an infrastructure provided by a Provider. CIMI does not extend beyond infrastructure management to the control of the applications and services that the Consumer chooses to run on the infrastructure provided as a service by the Provider. Although CIMI may be to some extent applicable to other cloud service models, such as Platform as a Service (PaaS) or Storage as a Service ("SaaS"), these uses are outside the design goals of CIMI.

1.1 Document structure

This document defines a model and a RESTful HTTP-based protocol.

The core REST patterns are defined first and, after each resource is defined, any HTTP-specific information for that resource is specified.

1.2 Document versioning scheme

This document adheres to the versioning scheme defined in clause 6.3 of [DSP4004](#).

As the specification changes over time certain features might be deprecated. These are identified in the specification and should not be supported. Each of these deprecated features is clearly denoted in the clause in which they were previously defined.

1.3 Typographical conventions

This specification uses the following conventions:

In the narrative text of the specification:

- The regular or narrative font is Arial.
- Proper CIMI nouns such as Resource names, attribute names, operation names, reserved variable names are in `Courier` font. (e.g., `Machine`, `volumes`, `$expand`). The plural form applies to such names to indicate several instances of such Resources (e.g., `Machines`, `Systems`).
- Example text is in small `Courier` font and over a darker background.
- Quotes are used for any text that needs be distinguished as a name or value of a particular concept (e.g., the "value constraints" attribute, the "Resource Name" column, a "false" value). In such cases, the string in quotes is always qualified by the concept it is an instance of.
- Names for CIMI concepts that may be common English words but have a very specific meaning in CIMI, are in narrative font but capitalized, e.g., Provider, Consumer, Resource, Collection.

When used in their common English sense they remain lowercase. However, CIMI modeling concepts that are used in a commonly understood manner remain in lowercase, such as: attribute, operation.

Inside tables describing the Resource data model:

- The narrative font is used for all terms, as the table structure qualifies them sufficiently.
- Where textual descriptions are introduced, the rules for narrative text apply.
- Names that are used as types (i.e., names of embedded structures as well as atomic types such as "integer", "string"), are in *italic*.
- Names that are just placeholders for actual names that may vary with each model instance, are shown between < > (e.g., <componentTemplate>).

Where the serialization of Resources is described, a pseudo-schema notation is used with the following conventions:

- Values in *italics* indicate data types instead of literal values.
- Characters are appended to items to indicate cardinality:
 - "?" (0 or 1)
 - "*" (0 or more)
 - "+" (1 or more)
- Vertical bars, "|", denote choice. For example, "a|b" means a choice between "a" and "b".
- The characters {, }, [, and] are block delimiters within the pseudo-schema. (Blocks may extend over multiple lines.)
- Parentheses, "(" and ")" are used in the pseudo-schema only to indicate the scope of the operators "?", "*", "+", and "|".
- Ellipses (i.e., "...") indicate points of extensibility. Note that the lack of an ellipsis does not mean no extensibility point exists, rather it is just not explicitly called out - usually for the sake of brevity.
- The scope of "?", "*", "+", and "|" follows these rules:
 - If immediately following a block delimiter or an array closing symbol e.g., "], ?", the scope is the entire block.
 - If not following any closing block delimiter, the scope is everything that precedes it on the same single line.

Operation names Create, Update, Delete, Read are abstract operations that convey the semantics of concrete corresponding operations, such as HTTP methods or CIMI operation URIs.

2 Normative references

The following referenced documents are indispensable for the application of this document. For dated or versioned references, only the edition cited (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies. For references without a date or version, the latest published edition of the referenced document (including any corrigenda or DMTF update versions) applies.

DMTF DSP0223, *Generic Operations 1.0*,
http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP0223_1.0.pdf

- 379 DMTF DSP0243, *Open Virtualization Format Specification 1.1*,
380 http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP0243_1.1.pdf
- 381 DMTF DSP0262, *Cloud Audit Data Federation (CADF) -Data Format and Interface Definitions*
382 *Specification version 1.0.0*,
383 http://dmtof.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP0262_1.0.0.pdf
- 384 DMTF DSP1001, *Management Profile Specification Usage Guide 1.1*,
385 http://www.dmtf.org/standards/published_documents/DSP1001_1.1.pdf
- 386 DMTF DSP4004, *DMTF Release Process 2.4*,
387 http://www.dmtf.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP4004_2.4.pdf
- 388 IANA HTTP Header Registry,
389 <http://www.iana.org/assignments/message-headers/perm-headers.html>
- 390 IEC 80000-13:2008, International Organization for Standardization, Geneva, Switzerland, *Quantities and*
391 *units – Part 13: Information science and technology*, April 2008,
392 http://www.iso.org/iso/catalogue_detail?csnumber=31898
- 393 IEEE 802.3-2012, IEEE Standards Association. *IEEE Standard for Ethernet*, December 2012,
394 <http://standards.ieee.org/findstds/standard/802.3-2012.html>
- 395 IETF RFC791, Postel, J., *Internet Protocol*, September 1981,
396 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc791.txt>
- 397 IETF RFC2460, Deering, S. and R. Hinden, *Internet Protocol, Version 6 (IPv6) Specification*, December
398 1998,
399 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2460.txt>
- 400 IETF RFC7230, R. Fielding et al, *Hypertext Transfer Protocol -(HTTP/1.1)*,
401 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc7230.txt>
- 402 IETF RFC3986, T.Berners-Lee et al, *Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI): Generic Syntax*, August 1998,
403 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc3986.txt>
- 404 IETF RFC4291, Deering, S. and R. Hinden, *IP Version 6 Addressing Architecture*, February 2006,
405 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4291.txt>
- 406 IETF RFC4627, D. Crockford, *The application/json Media Type for JavaScript Object Notation (JSON)*,
407 July 2006,
408 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc4627.txt>
- 409 IETF RFC5246, T. Dierks and E. Rescorla, *The Transport Layer Security (TLS) Protocol Version 1.2*,
410 <http://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc5246.txt>
- 411 ISO 8601:20044, International Organization for Standardization, Geneva, Switzerland, *Data elements and*
412 *interchange formats -- Information interchange - - Representation of dates and times*, March 2008,
413 http://www.iso.org/iso/iso_catalogue/catalogue_tc/catalogue_detail.htm?csnumber=40874
- 414 ISO/IEC 14977:1996, Roger S. Scowen, *Extended BNF — A generic base standard*. Software
415 Engineering Standards Symposium 1993.
416 http://www.iso.org/iso/catalogue_detail?csnumber=26153

- ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2, *Rules for the structure and drafting of International Standards*,
<http://isotc.iso.org/livelink/livelink.exe?func=ll&objId=4230456&objAction=browse&sort=subtype>
- NIST Special Publication 800-145, Peter Mell and Timothy Grance, *The NIST Definition of Cloud Computing*, Sept. 2011,
<http://csrc.nist.gov/publications/nistpubs/800-145/SP800-145.pdf>
- NIST Special Publication 500-292, Fang Liu, Jin Tong, Jian Mao, Robert Bohn, John Messina, Lee Badger and Dawn Leaf, *NIST Cloud Computing Reference Architecture*, Sept. 2011,
http://collaborate.nist.gov/twiki-cloud-computing/pub/CloudComputing/ReferenceArchitectureTaxonomy/NIST_SP_500-292_-_090611.pdf
- Representational State Transfer, Roy Fielding, Doctoral dissertation, University of California, *Architectural Styles and the Design of Network-based Software Architectures (Chapter 5)*, 2000,
http://www.ics.uci.edu/~fielding/pubs/dissertation/rest_arch_style.htm
- Unicode Standard, Unicode Consortium, *The Unicode Standard*, Version 2.0, Addison-Wesley, 1996.
- XMLSchema - Part 1, World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) Recommendation, H. Thompson, et al., Editors, *XML Schema Part 1: Structures Second Edition*, 28 October 2004,
<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-1/>
- XMLSchema - Part 2, World Wide Web Consortium (W3C) Recommendation, P. Biron, A. Malhotra, Editors, *XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes (Second Edition)*, 28 October 2004,
<http://www.w3.org/TR/xmlschema-2/>

3 Terms and definitions

In this document, some terms have a specific meaning beyond the normal English meaning. Those terms are defined in this clause.

The terms "shall" ("required"), "shall not," "should" ("recommended"), "should not" ("not recommended"), "may," "need not" ("not required"), "can" and "cannot" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H. The terms in parenthesis are alternatives for the preceding term, for use in exceptional cases when the preceding term cannot be used for linguistic reasons. Note that [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Annex H specifies additional alternatives. Occurrences of such additional alternatives shall be interpreted in their normal English meaning.

The terms "clause," "subclause," "paragraph," and "annex" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 5.

The terms "normative" and "informative" in this document are to be interpreted as described in [ISO/IEC Directives, Part 2](#), Clause 3. In this document, clauses, subclauses, or annexes labeled "(informative)" do not contain normative content. Notes and examples are always informative elements.

The terms defined in [DSP4004](#), [DSP0223](#), and [DSP1001](#) apply to this document. The following additional terms are used in this document.

3.1 authentication

The process of verifying a claim, made by a subject, that it should be allowed to act on behalf of a given principal (person, service, etc.). Typical authentication mechanisms involve the use of username/password combination or public/private key pairs.

3.2 authorization

The process of verifying that an authenticated principal (person, service, etc.) has permission to perform certain operations (e.g., read, update) on specific Resources. (Also known as Access Control.)

3.3 cloud

Synonymous with “cloud computing” as defined in section 2 of the NIST Definition of Cloud Computing [\[SP800-145\]](#).

3.4 Cloud Service Consumer

A category of actors that includes the Consumer Business Manager (who approves business and financial expenditures for consumed services; accounts for used service instances; establishes business relationships; sets up accounts, budget, and terms; etc.); the Consumer Service Administrator (who requests service instances and changes to service instances; purchases services within the business relationship; creates Service Users (including policies); allocates resources, such as computer and storage; generates reports, such as usage; etc.); and Service Users (who use service instances provided by a Cloud Service Provider). The term "Consumer" is used if the indicated action or activity could involve one or more of the above actors. In cases where the distinction between the actors in this category is relevant, the more detailed term is used.

For purposes of comparison and alignment, it should be noted that a Cloud Service Consumer is equivalent to the “Cloud Consumer” actor defined in the NIST Reference Architecture [\[SP500-292\]](#).

3.5 Cloud Service Provider

A category of actors that includes the Service Operations Manager (who manages the technical infrastructure required for providing cloud services; monitors and measures performance and utilization against SLAs; provides reports from monitoring and measurement; etc.); Service Business Manager (who offers all types of services developed by cloud service developers; accounts for services potentially offered by service Providers themselves and services offered on behalf of cloud service developers; establishes a portfolio of business relationships; and sets up accounts and terms for Consumers, etc.); and Service Transition Manager (who enables a customer to use the cloud service, including "onboarding", integration, and process adoption; defines and creates service offerings based on Templates and Configurations that can be used by Consumers and are populated into the catalog; etc.). The term "Provider" is used if the indicated action or activity could involve one or more of the above actors. In cases where the distinction between the actors in the category is relevant, the more detailed term is used.

For purposes of comparison and alignment, it should be noted that a Cloud Service Provider is equivalent to the “Cloud Provider” actor defined in the NIST Reference Architecture [\[SP500-292\]](#).

3.6 Collection

A particular kind of Resource that contains a collection of other Resources and has a representation and serialization defined in this specification. Synonym for “CIMI collection”.

3.7 Configuration

A set of metadata, the values of which serve as the parameters of a discrete conformation of a specific type of virtual resource.

3.8 Endpoint

An element within a Network Segment from which communication can originate or to which communication can be sent. Endpoints have a unique, protocol specific, address within a Segment by which they are distinguished.

3.9 Infrastructure as a Service (IaaS)

A cloud computing service model defined in section 2 of the NIST Definition of Cloud Computing [\[SP800-145\]](#).

3.10 Interface

An abstract element of virtual hardware that enables connection to a Network via Endpoints.

3.11 message confidentiality

A quality of a message that prevents anyone but the intended receiver(s) from viewing its contents.

3.12 message integrity

A quality of a message that allows a receiver of that message to determine whether the contents of the message have been altered since its creation.

3.13 Network

A construct that supports communications between elements within a Cloud using one or more protocol specific Segments that support addressable Endpoints.

3.14 Resource

A representation of an entity managed by the [Cloud Service] Provider that is generally available to the [Cloud Service] Consumer to access or operate on by way of the interface described in this specification. Synonym for "CIMI resource".

3.15 Segment

A component of a Network that supports communication between Endpoints using a single protocol. Also referred to as a Protocol Segment to emphasize that Segments are always bound to a single communication protocol.

3.16 Template

A component Synonym for "CIMI template". A Resource that represents the set of metadata and instructions used to instantiate some other Resource (e.g., a `MachineTemplate` is used to create `Machines`).

4 HTTP-based protocol**4.1 Introduction**

All operations are based on the *HyperText Transfer Protocol (HTTP)*, version 1.1 [\[RFC2616\]](#). Each request is sent by using an HTTP verb such as PUT, GET, DELETE, HEAD, or POST and includes a message body in either JSON or XML format. Each response uses a standard HTTP status code, whose semantics are interpreted in the context of the particular request that was made. Each Resource in the model has a MIME type that further contextualizes the payload of requests and responses.

Resources in the model are identified by URIs, and each Resource's representation shall contain an "ID" attribute, of type URI, that acts as a "self pointer." This URI shall be unique within the context of the Provider's implementation. Dereferencing (through an HTTP GET) the URI of a Resource yields a representation of the Resource containing attributes and links to associated Resources. To begin operations, a client shall know the URI to the main entry point of a Provider - also known as the "Cloud Entry Point" Resource. All other Resources within the environment shall then be discoverable by the way of the iterative following of links to associated Resources within each Resource retrieved.

4.1.1 Protocol evolution and client expectations

Future versions of this specification structure changes in such a way that clients that conform to an earlier version of this specification continue to work, and are not be adversely affected by the evolution of the protocol. Clients are expected to follow a few simple rules to ensure this compatibility:

1. Clients shall not assume that the serializations shown for responses in this specification are complete. In particular, clients shall accept responses that contain data mixed in with the serializations shown here, and shall ignore such data. However, per clause 4.2.1.3, clients shall include unknown data in PUT requests to update Resources.

2. Clients shall not assume anything about the operations supported by a server. They are expected to discover operations that are supported (and permissible) by navigating to Resources from the cloud entry point. The serializations of Resources encountered indicate which operations are supported by the server.

4.1.2 XML namespaces

Error! Reference source not found. lists the XML namespaces that are used in this specification. The choice of any namespace prefix is arbitrary and not semantically significant.

Table 1 - XML namespaces

Prefix	XML Namespaces	Specification
cimi	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2	This specification
xs	http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema	XML Schema Part2

4.1.3 URI space

While URIs returned by Providers are to be treated as opaque by Consumers, and Consumers shall not make assumptions about the layout of the URIs or the structures of the URIs for the Resources, a Consumer may augment URIs with any well-defined query parameters that are supported by the Provider as defined in clause 4.1.6.

The sample URIs used in this specification are not normative and the patterns used shall not be interpreted as guidance for implementations. For example, any of the following URIs might be used by Providers to reference a particular Machine Resource:

```
http://example.com/machines/12345
http://example.com/machines?id=12345
http://example.com/12345
http://example.com/Cloud/resource?id=12345
```

4.1.4 Media types

In this specification, Resource and response representations are encoded either in JSON, as specified in [RFC4627](#) or in XML. If serialized in JSON, the media-type for CIMI resources shall be "application/json". If serialized in XML, the media-type shall be "application/xml".

In the JSON serialization of CIMI representations sent by Providers, there shall be an additional attribute on the root object called "resourceURI" that contains the unique URI that is associated with the type of CIMI resource being serialized.

Note that this requirement applies even if the `$select` attribute is used to subset the Resource being acted upon.

In the XML serialization of Collection representations sent by Providers there shall be a `resourceURI` attribute, as shown in the example XML serialization of Collections in clause 5.5.12.

This attribute is optional for Consumers to include. If included, this attribute's value shall match the "typeURI" attribute of the corresponding `ResourceMetadata` Resource (see clause 5.8), if `ResourceMetadata` is supported. This value shall also be equivalent to the wrapping element of the XML serialization; in other words, the namespace of the wrapper element concatenated a "/" and then its `localName`.

Any CIMI resource implemented by a Provider shall have representations in JSON and XML. The client implementation may thus use either JSON or XML in requests with any server implementation, and may request a specific serialization using server-driven content negotiation (using the Accept request header).

4.1.5 Request headers

This specification uses general-header, request-header, and entity-header headers as defined in [RFC2616](#) in request messages to provide metadata about the message. Applications using messages defined in this specification shall use headers consistent with the requirements of [RFC2616](#).

4.1.6 Request query parameters

Providers may choose to include query parameters as part of the URIs returned to Consumers. Consumers shall include those query parameters when sending messages to those URIs. CIMI defined query parameters are prefixed with a dollar sign ("\$"). If Providers choose to define query parameters, they shall not be prefixed with a dollar sign to avoid conflicts with current and future CIMI defined query parameters.

To modify the behavior of the Provider when processing request messages, Consumers may augment request URIs as described in the following clauses. As stated in clause 4.1.3, URIs returned from Providers are to be treated as opaque by Consumers; however, it is the responsibility of the Consumer to understand the use of the query parameters defined in the following clauses and ensure correctness when making a request.

Unsupported, or unknown, query parameters shall be silently ignored by Providers. Consumers may examine the CloudEntryPoint's capabilities to determine whether support of these query parameters is enabled.

4.1.6.1 Filtering Collections

If retrieving the representation of a Collection, Consumers may include the `$filter` query parameter to reduce the number of entries of the Collection that are returned based on the data within the entries of the Collection. Providers shall interpret and process the `$filter` query parameter as described in this section. The `$filter` parameter shall be of the form:

```
?$filter=expression
```

where "expression" represents a mathematical expression denoting how the top-level attributes of the Resources within the Collection shall be filtered. The expression is defined by the following EBNF grammar:

```
Filter      ::= AndExpr ( 'or' Filter ) * ;
AndExpr     ::= Comp ( 'and' AndExpr ) *
Comp        ::= Attribute Op Value
              | Value Op Attribute
              | PropExpr
              | '(' Filter ')'
Op           ::= '<' | '<=' | '=' | '>=' | '>' | '!='
Attribute   ::= ? resource attribute name ?
Value        ::= IntValue | DateValue | StringValue | BoolValue
IntValue     ::= /[0-9]+/
DateValue    ::= ? as defined by XML Schema ?
StringValue  ::= "... " | '...'
```



```

624 BoolValue ::= 'true' | 'false'
625 PropExpr  ::= 'property[' stringValue ']' Op stringValue

```

Where `PropExpr` is used to find Resources that contain a property with a certain key/value combination. The key is the `stringValue` within the square brackets (`[]`) and the value is the `stringValue` after the `Op`. The Resource shall be considered to satisfy the search criteria if any of the properties in the Resources match the specified `PropExpr`.

Each of these shall be percent encoded in the URL as appropriate.

The choice of which operator (including 'and' and 'or') is limited based on the type of the value and attribute. The following example describes the allowable operators:

```

633 'or', 'and'                : Boolean value/attribute
634 '<', '<=', '=', '>=', '>', '!=' : Integer and date value/attribute
635 '=', '!='                  : String value/attribute

```

Consumers may include multiple filters within a single URI. Providers shall treat multiple filters as a series of "and" expressions where an entry of the Collection shall only be included in the response message if it satisfies all of the filter expressions specified.

639 Examples:

In the following examples, the following sample base URIs are used.

The URI to the `MachineCollection` of the Cloud Entry Point is as follows:

```
642 /machines
```

The URI to a `Machine` is as follows:

```
644 /machines/123
```

The URI to the `DiskCollection` of a `Machine` is as follows:

```
646 /machines/123/disks
```

The URI to the `VolumeCollection` of a `Machine` is as follows:

```
648 /machines/123/volumes
```

To filter the `MachineCollection` so that just `Machines` with a "name" attribute of "mine" are returned, use the following filter:

```
651 GET /machines?$filter=name='mine'
```

To filter a `DiskCollection` of a `Machine` so that just `Disks` with a format of "ntfs" are returned, the following filter would be used:

```
654 GET /machines/123/disks?$filter=format='ntfs'
```

If the `$filter` parameter is used, the Collection's "count" attribute shall contain the number of Resources matching the filter expression.

657 4.1.6.2 Subsetting Collections

If retrieving the representation of a Collection, Consumers may include query parameters to subset the number of entities of the Collection that are returned. Providers shall interpret and process these query parameters as described in this clause. While the previous clause discussed how to perform a filter over the data within the Collection, this clause uses ordinal position within the Collection to achieve the desired reduction.

This specification defined two query parameters that, if used, shall indicate the first and last ordinal positions of the entities within the Collection that are returned. The query parameters shall be of the form:

```
?$first=number
```

```
?$last=number
```

Where "\$first" indicates the (1-based) ordinal position of the first entity of the Collection to return and "\$last" indicates the (1-based) ordinal position of the last entity of the Collection to return. Consumers are not required to use both at the same time. If \$first is specified but \$last is not, the implied value for \$last shall be the ordinal position of the last entity in the Collection. Conversely, if \$last is specified but \$first is not, the implied value for \$first shall be 1.

If Consumers include these query parameters, the ordinal positions of entries in the collection before subsetting shall be stable when no changes are made to the collection or its entries. If filtering or sorting are used in the same query, the subsetting applies to the collection resulting from those operations.

If any part of the range as expressed by \$first and \$last is outside of the bounds of the Collection, just the Resources (if any) in the Collection that are contained within that range shall be returned. A fault shall not be generated if any part, or all, of the expressed range is outside the bounds of the Collection. Note that if \$first is larger than \$last, the range shall represent an empty range and therefore no Resources are returned.

If either \$first or \$last are specified, and a filter expression (as defined in clause 4.1.6.1) is also specified, the filter expression shall be performed first and then the ordinal constraints of \$first and \$last shall be applied.

The inclusion of \$first or \$last does not affect the value of the Collection's returned "count" attribute: it shall contain the number of Resources in the Collection before subsetting. In case filtering is also used, "count" shall be the size of the Collection resulting from the filtering.

4.1.6.3 Subsetting Resources

If retrieving the representation of a Resource, Consumers may include the \$select query parameter to specify a subset of the Resource to be acted upon. Providers shall interpret and process this query parameter as described in this section. This subsetting shall have the semantic equivalence of referencing a different Resource whose attributes are a subset of the original Resource as specified by the attribute names listed in the \$select query parameter. The format of a \$select query parameter is:

```
?$select=attributeName,...
```

The value of the \$select query parameter shall be a comma-separated list of top-level attribute names of the Resource, possibly including the string "operations" in case the intent is to select the operations available to the Consumer for this Resource. Any attribute name erroneously appearing in the list that is not part of the Resource shall be ignored by the Provider. An attribute name of "*" is equivalent to specifying all of the attributes of the Resource including its operations. Any attribute name explicitly appearing more than once in a URI shall have its second (and subsequent) appearances ignored.

The \$select query parameter may appear more than once in a URI. This is semantically equivalent to all of the attribute names appearing as values of a single \$select query parameter. For example:

```
?$select=name&$select=state
```

is equivalent to:

```
?$select=name,state
```

The order of attribute names in the `$select` query parameter is not relevant for serialization purposes. The attributes are serialized per the serialization rules/order as specified by the Resource definition.

Note that per clause 4.1.4, if a Resource representation is sent by a Provider it shall always include the `resourceURI` attribute even if it is not specified in the `$select` query parameter.

For example, to subset the list of Machine attributes being acted upon to just the "name" and "description", the following query parameter would be used:

```
?$select=name,description
```

See clause 4.2.1.3.1 for more information about the impact of using this query parameter when updating a Resource.

If `$select` is used in the URI for a Collection resource, the subsettings shall apply to the attributes of the Collection resource itself as for any other Resource. For example, to subset a Collection resource in order to only return the number of its items, plus the operations available on this Collection:

```
?$select=count,operations
```

However, exceptionally for Collection resources, if some attribute provided in the `$select` list is not a top-level attribute of the Collection resource but instead is an attribute of the entities that are items of the Collection, the subsetting shall apply to each item of the Collection regarding this attribute. For example, if retrieving the `DiskCollection`, the following query parameter:

```
?$select=name,capacity
```

returns a collection of the `Disks` associated with a `Machine` but each entity of the collection just has the `name` and `capacity` attributes and nothing else, not even the `operations` or `id` attributes.

Optionally, an implementation may also support the alternative attribute name notation: `<collectionName>/<attributeName>` for subsetting the items inside a collection. For example, the following subsetting on items of a `Disks` Collection is equivalent to the one done in the previous example, while in addition listing the operations of the Collection resource itself (not of its items):

```
?$select=disks/name,disks/capacity,operations
```

This notation, if supported (see the "QueryPathNotation" capability in 5.11.1), allows for disambiguating subsettings if the same attribute name can be found for the Collection and for each item in the collection (which is always the case for `id` and `operations`).

4.1.6.4 Expanding references

If retrieving the representation of a Resource, Consumers may include the `$expand` query parameter to specify which of the top-level "reference" attributes of the Resource shall be "expanded". Providers shall interpret and process this query parameter as described in this clause. To expand a reference means that the attributes of the Resource being referenced shall be included in the serialization of that attribute. This feature allows for a more optimized retrieval of Resources.

The serialization shall be performed as follows:

JSON serialization:

```
"name": { "href": string }
```

shall be expanded to be:

```
"name": {
  "href": string,
  ... attributes of referenced resource...
```

```
}

```

XML serialization:

```
<name href="xs:anyURI"/>

```

shall be expanded to be:

```
<name href="xs:anyURI">
  ... attributes of the referenced resource...
</name>

```

Note that in the XML case the nested elements shall not contain the wrapper element of the referenced Resource (e.g., `<Machine>` in the case of a reference to a `Machine` Resource).

The format of a `$expand` query parameter shall be:

```
?$expand=attributeName,...

```

The value of the `$expand` query parameter is a comma-separated list of attribute names. Any attribute name erroneously appearing in the list that is not part of the Resource, or is not a reference, shall be ignored by the Provider. An attribute name of `"**"`, or no attribute name list at all, is equivalent to specifying all of the attributes. Any attribute name explicitly appearing more than once in a URI shall have its second (and subsequent) appearances ignored.

The `$expand` query parameter may appear more than once in a URI, which is semantically equivalent to all of the attribute names appearing as values of a single `$expand` query parameter.

If the Resource being retrieved is a Collection, the attribute names listed in the `$expand` shall apply to the attributes of the entities within the Collection. For example, specifying:

```
?$expand=volumes

```

if retrieving the `MachineCollection` has the same net effect as applying the "expand" semantics to the specified attribute ("volumes" in this example) of each `Machine` within the Collection. To be clear, `$expand` acts on the attributes of the Resources in the Collection, not on the wrapping Collection Resource itself.

4.1.6.5 Specifying the Resource format

If retrieving the representation of a Resource, the HTTP Accept header is used to specify the encoding style of the response. While it is recommended that Consumers use the Accept header, there might be situations where Consumers are unable to control the values specified in that header. In these cases Consumers may use the `$format` query parameter to override the Accept header values. Providers shall interpret and process the `$format` query parameter as described in this clause.

The `$format` parameter shall be of the form:

```
?$format=encoding

```

Where "encoding" is the requested representation of the response. This specification defines two possible values: "json" and "xml". Providers may support others. The value of the `$format` query parameter shall be case insensitive.

If both an Accept header and `$format` query parameter are present in a request message, the `$format` value shall take precedence. If the `$format` query parameter appears more than once, the second, and subsequent, appearances shall be ignored.

4.1.6.6 Sorting Collections

If retrieving the representation of a Collection, Consumers may include the `$orderby` query parameter to sort the entries of the Collection that are returned based on different attributes or in a different order (descending). Providers shall interpret and process the `$orderby` query parameter as described in this section. The `$orderby` parameter shall be of the form:

```
?$orderby=attributeName[:asc|:desc], ...
```

The `$orderby` expression may include multiple, comma-separated attribute names. Each attribute name may be optionally followed immediately by a colon and “asc” to denote ascending order (default), or “desc” to denote descending order for that attribute. If neither asc nor desc is specified, the order shall be “ascending”.

The attributes included in the `$orderby` shall be of the following types as defined in clause 5.5: boolean, dateTime, duration, integer, or string.

The sort shall be performed based on the attribute type.

The following rules apply to the ascending sort order:

- boolean – ‘false’ shall come before ‘true’.
- dateTime – An earlier datetime shall come before a later datetime.
- duration – A shorter duration shall come before a longer duration.
- integer – Smaller integers shall come before larger integers. Negative integers shall come before positive integers.
- string – Ordering is based on a binary comparison of the transformed strings according to the rules of the Normalization Form KD of the Unicode standard as defined in [Unicode Standard Annex \(UAX\), annex #15](#).

For the desc sort order, the reverse of the above shall be performed.

Examples:

To sort the result set of the `MachinesCollection` Resource on the “created” attribute in descending order, the following expression would be used:

```
GET /machines?$orderby=created:desc
```

To sort the result set of the `MachinesCollection` Resource on the “cpu” attribute in descending order, followed by the “memory” attribute in ascending order, the following expression would be used:

```
GET /machines?$orderby=cpu:desc,memory:asc
```

If collection subsetting is used in the same query, the subsetting applies to the sorted collection. When no `$orderby` is specified, the order of entries in the returned Collection is not defined.

4.1.7 Response headers

As defined in [RFC2616](#), this specification uses general-header, response-header, and entity-header headers in response messages to provide metadata about the message. Applications that use messages defined in this specification shall use headers consistent with the IANA HTTP Header Registry.

4.1.7.1 Job header

If the server supports the `Job` Resource, response messages shall include a header defined by this specification to indicate the URI for the job created to process the associated request message.

```
CIMI-Job-URI = "CIMI-Job-URI" ":" string
```

4.1.7.2 ETag support

An ETag header may be provided by a Provider with each Resource as specified in [RFC2616](#). If a Provider does provide an ETag header, it shall also support If-Match header processing on behalf of the Consumer.

4.2 Protocol operations

This clause defines the set of common HTTP operations that a Provider may expose. At its core, there are four basic CRUD (Create, Read, Update, and Delete) operations. The manner in which these are used is consistent across all Resources within the model; therefore, their use is defined once and is to be applied consistently. Some Resources support specialized operations that do not fit well into a CRUD style of operation and those follow a similar high-level pattern, but each operation is allowed to have slight variations to accommodate its specific needs. The specifics of these special operations are detailed within the clause that defines the Resource.

If appropriate, some of the Resource representations include an "operations" attribute. Providers shall only include the "operations" attribute if the specified operations are accessible to the current client for that particular Resource. This situation means that based on many factors (e.g., authorization rights of the clients, current state of the Resource, etc.), a different set of "operations" shall be returned on each serialization of the Resource.

Each operation shall include a "rel" and an "href" field. The "rel" field shall uniquely identify the operation name (e.g., "add", "edit"), while the "href" field is the URI to which the operation's request message shall be sent. Note that the "href" field's URI may be different from the URI of the Resource itself. Each operation may have an "available" field to indicate that the operation can be performed by the Consumer. The "available" field is of type boolean with a default value of "true". If "available" is set to "false" it indicates that the operation is not currently available. This would normally indicate a temporary condition. For example, some Machine operations may not be available depending on the state of the Machine.

The operations attribute shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```
{ "operations": [
  { "rel": string, "href": string, ("available": boolean)? }, +
]
```

XML serialization:

```
<operations xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
  <operation rel="xs:anyURI" href="xs:anyURI" (available="xs:boolean")? /> *
</operations>
```

For example, the "edit" operation would appear as:

JSON serialization:

```
{ "operations": [
  { "rel": "edit", "href": "<editURI>" }
```

866]
867 }

868 XML serialization:

869 <operations xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
870 <operation rel="edit" href="<editURI>" />
871 </operations>

872 Additional "rel" values may be defined by Providers; however, they shall be fully qualified URIs and not
873 relative URIs.

874 4.2.1 Common CRUD operations

875 Each of the Resources supported by this protocol shall adhere to the interaction patterns defined in the
876 following clauses.

877 4.2.1.1 Creating a new Resource

878 To create a new instance of a Resource type, an HTTP POST request is sent to a designated "addURI"
879 for that Resource type. In many cases, the Collection resource that maintains, or groups, all instances of
880 that Resource type includes an "add" operation. The "add" operation references the addURI that is to be
881 used.

882 The HTTP POST request shall include:

- 883 • CIMI serialization of the request to create a new Resource in the HTTP Body
- 884 • HTTP Content-Type header
- 885 • HTTP Content-Length header

886 For example, the request can be:

887 POST <addURI> HTTP/1.1
888 Host: <hostname>
889 Accept: application/(json|xml)
890 Content-Type: application/(json|xml)
891 Content-Length: <length>
892
893 <serialization of request to create a new resource>

894 This example has an Accept header with one of the CIMI supported media types: application/json or
895 application/xml. If the Provider chooses to reply with a serialization, this serialization should be of the
896 specified media type. Omission of the Accept header allows the Provider to reply with a serialization of
897 any media type. If the Resource has a "State" attribute, its value shall be "CREATING" while the
898 Provider is processing this operation.

899 Many of the create requests are defined such that a Template of the new Resource is passed. These
900 create requests allow for the Template to be passed in "by-reference" or "by-value." For example,
901 creating a new Machine looks like this (here using XML):

902 <MachineCreate xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
903 <name> xs:string </name> ?
904 <description> xs:string </description> ?

```

905     <properties>
906         <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
907     </properties>
908 <machineTemplate href="xs:anyURI"? >
909     ... template attributes ... ?
910 </machineTemplate>
911 </MachineCreate>

```

Note that in the XML case the creation of a new `Machine` requires a wrapper element named `MachineCreate` per the rules specified in clause 5.5.12.1.

More generally, creating a new `Resource` shall follow one of these two serialization patterns (here illustrated in JSON):

(1) Resource creation by passing a `Template` by value:

```

917 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceCreate",
918   "name": "myResourceName", ?
919   "description": "My resource description", ?
920   "properties": { "proplname" : "proplvalue" , + }, ?
921   "resourceTemplate": {
922     <here the template is passed by value>
923   }
924 }

```

Where `resourceTemplate` is the actual name of the template for that `Resource`.

(2) Resource creation by passing a template by reference:

```

927 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceCreate ",
928   "name": "myResourceName", ?
929   "description": "My resource description", ?
930   "properties": { "proplname" : "proplvalue" , + }, ?
931   "resourceTemplate": { "href": string ,
932     <here some template attribute/value pairs may be added to override values in the
933     referenced template>
934   }
935 }

```

In case the created `Resource` is itself a `Template`, only the first creation pattern - by value - applies.

In both patterns (1) and (2) the `resourceURI` attribute specifies the operation here generically identified as “`ResourceCreate`”, e.g., `MachineCreate`.

In both patterns (1) and (2) an element corresponding to the `Resource Template` (here identified generically as “`resourceTemplate`” e.g., `MachineTemplate`) is specifying the `Template` to be used, either by value (1) or by reference (2).

Direct setting of attributes in the new `Resource`:

In a creation request it is possible to set the value of some attributes of the newly created `Resource`, regardless of what values the `Template` instantiation might have set if used alone. Three common attributes of the newly created `Resource` may be set: `name`, `description`, and `properties`.

The semantics shall be same as of a partial update of the `Resource` for these attributes (described in a next subclause), immediately following the `Resource` creation from the `Template` alone.

Defining or referring to the `Resource Template`:

In pattern (1) above, the Provider may choose to create a Template Resource from the value given, but such creation is temporary in nature. The Provider shall not expose such a transient Resource to the Consumer and no such transient Resource shall be included in any query results back to the Consumer.

In pattern (2) above, additional attribute name/value pairs may be given inside the ResourceTemplate element that also contains the reference to the external (pre-existing) Template in order to override similar attributes defined in the Template. More precisely:

- Any top-level attribute of complex or simple type in the referred Template shall be overridden by providing its name/value pair in the create request inside the resourceTemplate element and immediately under it. For a top-level attribute of a complex type (e.g., arrays, Collections, structures), the provided complex value shall also set all underlying attributes – e.g., array elements.
- The semantics shall be same as of modifying (overriding) parts of the referred Template just before it is used for instantiation, but these overrides shall not persist in the referred Template and shall only concern this particular instantiation.

In pattern (2) above, Consumers may erase any Template attributes by specifying either

```
"attribute": null
```

for the attribute in the JSON serialization, or

```
<attribute/>
```

in the XML serialization for that attribute.

Some of the create requests allow for configuration type of Resources to be passed by-reference or by-value as well - e.g., `Credential` on a `Machine` create operation. The processing rules defined above applies in those cases as well.

If the response has a 201 status code, the response shall include:

- HTTP Location header with a reference to the new Resource

If the response to a create request includes a serialization of the new Resource, the response shall additionally include:

- HTTP Content-Type header
- HTTP Content-Length header

For example, the response can be:

```
HTTP/1.1 201 Created
Location: <location>
Content-Type: application/(json|xml)
Content-Length: <length>

<serialization of new resource>
```

4.2.1.2 Retrieving a representation of a Resource

To retrieve a representation of Resource, an HTTP GET request is sent to the Resource's URI.

For example, the request can be:

```
GET <ResourceURI> HTTP/1.1
```

```

988 Host: <hostname>
989 Accept: application/(json|xml)

```

990 If the response has a 200 status code, the response shall include:

- 991 • HTTP Content-Type header
- 992 • HTTP Content-Length header

993 For example, the response can be:

```

994 HTTP/1.1 200 OK
995 Content-Type: application/(json|xml)
996 Content-Length: <length>
997
998 <serialization of resource>

```

999 4.2.1.3 Updating a Resource

1000 To update a Resource's state, an HTTP PUT request containing the complete, updated representation is
 1001 sent to a designated `editURI` for that Resource type. Consumers shall include all non-empty attributes
 1002 of the Resource in the PUT request - including ones that it might not support or understand that were
 1003 returned in a GET response. This is to ensure that a client does not inadvertently modify (erase) data in a
 1004 Resource by excluding it from the full representation of the Resource.

1005 In many cases, this `editURI` is the same as the URI of Resource itself. Retrieving the Resource
 1006 representation shall include an "edit" operation, which contains the `editURI` that is to be used, if the
 1007 requester is allowed to modify the Resource.

1008 While processing a PUT request, if the server detects that an attempt is being made to update a
 1009 read-only, or immutable, attribute, it shall silently ignore that attribute update request and shall not
 1010 generate an error. This rule applies to Resource partial updates as well.

1011 Because of potential conflicts that might occur due to multiple concurrent updates, Consumers should use
 1012 the partial update mechanism, defined in 4.2.1.3.1, to reduce the chances of mistakenly updating
 1013 attributes with out-of-date data.

1014 The HTTP PUT request shall include:

- 1015 • CIMI serialization of the updated Resource in the HTTP Body
- 1016 • HTTP Content-Type header
- 1017 • HTTP Content-Length header

1018 For example, the request can be:

```

1019 PUT <editURI> HTTP/1.1
1020 Host: <hostname>
1021 Accept: application/(json|xml)
1022 Content-Type: application/(json|xml)
1023 Content-Length: <length>
1024
1025 <serialization of request to update a resource>

```

If the response includes a serialization of the updated Resource and has a status code of 200, this response shall include:

- HTTP Content-Type header
- HTTP Content-Length header

For example, the response can be:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
Content-Type: application/(json+xml)
Content-Length: <length>

<serialization of updated resource>
```

4.2.1.3.1 Partial updates to a Resource

For clarity, this clause explains how to use the `$select` query parameter (see clause 4.1.6.3) to subset a Resource for the purposes of only operating on a selected set of top-level attributes.

To update only certain top-level attributes of a Resource, a Consumer may include only the altered attributes in the representation of the Resource within the HTTP request body. If this request is made, the URI to the Resource shall include the attributes to be modified as a comma-separated list of query parameters; in other words, the URI shall be of the form:

```
http://example.com/resource?$select=attribute1,attribute2,...
```

Only the attributes listed in the URI's query parameters shall be modified; attributes not listed in the URI shall not be directly modified by the request. Note that this circumstance does not preclude the modification of one attribute causing side-effects that result in the modification of an attribute not listed in the query parameters.

Any attribute listed in the URI but not included within the HTTP request body shall be reset to a Resource specific value (e.g., removed).

From an HTTP perspective, the updated subsetted Resource is a distinct one. The semantics of a normal HTTP PUT are adhered to; it is a complete replacement update of the specified Resource. From the Consumer's perspective, the partial update is interpreted and executed by the Cloud Service Provider, and some part of the Resource is changed.

Adhering to the generic PUT semantics defined previously, any attribute of the original (full) Resource included within the HTTP request body shall result in an error being generated if that attribute is not listed in the `$select` query parameter - see clause 5.3. Note that this is due to these attributes being unknown to this subsetted Resource.

The following sample request updates just the name and description attributes of a Machine:

```
PUT /machines/myMachine?$select=name,description HTTP/1.1
Host: <hostname>
Accept: application/xml
Content-Type: application/xml
Content-Length: <length>

<Machine>
  <name>My New Machine</name>
</Machine>
```

The `name` attribute is set to "My New Machine" and the `description` attribute is erased.

4.2.1.4 Deleting a Resource

To delete a Resource, an HTTP DELETE request is sent to a designated `deleteURI` for that Resource type. In many cases, this `deleteURI` is the same as the URI of Resource itself. Retrieving the Resource representation shall include a "delete" operation, which contains the `deleteURI` that is to be used, if the requester is allowed to delete the Resource.

For example, the request can be:

```
DELETE <deleteURI> HTTP/1.1
Host: <hostname>
```

If the Resource has a `State` attribute, its value shall be "DELETING", while the Provider is processing this operation.

For example, the response can be:

```
HTTP/1.1 200 OK
```

4.2.1.5 Other operations

While some modifications to the Resources in the model can be done by the way of a simple update (PUT) operation to the Resource's `editURI`, sometimes a more complex set of actions needs to be taken. In these cases, the operations shall be modeled as HTTP POSTs to the operation specific URI of the Resource.

For each of the Resources that define additional operations, a description of the HTTP request and response bodies is provided. However, the general HTTP interaction are as described below.

The request shall be of the following form:

```
POST <operationURI> HTTP/1.1
Host: <hostname>
Accept: application/(json|xml)
Content-Type: application/(json|xml)
Content-Length: <length>

<serialization of request to perform some action>
```

The form of the response varies depending on the operation and is defined by the operation itself.

Note that the definition of the Create operation (see clause 4.2.1.1) follows this same pattern. It is just called out for ease of reference.

4.2.1.6 Synchronous operations

If a Provider supports the `Job` Resource, each incoming PUT, DELETE, POST request shall result in a Job Resource being created and an absolute URI reference to that Job Resource shall be returned back to the client by the way of the CIMI-Job-URI HTTP Header in the HTTP response message:

```
CIMI-Job-URI: <uri-to-Job>
```

In this case, the requested operation shall be complete and the Job URI shall point to a completed Job. If the Job is not complete, the server shall return a 202 and follow the instructions for Asynchronous operations.

4.2.1.7 Asynchronous operations

In some cases, an operation requested by the client may take an undetermined amount of time to be completed. For example, creating a new *Machine* or starting an existing *Machine* may take a relatively long time to be completed. In these cases, it is not practical to complete these operations within a reasonable HTTP request timeout interval, so the Provider shall return an HTTP "202 Accepted" response code.

As with synchronous operations, if a Provider supports the *Job* Resource, it shall create a *Job* Resource for the incoming request and return a reference to that *Job* Resource back to the client by the way of the CIMI-Job-URI HTTP Header in the HTTP response message. Additionally, in the case of a "202 Accepted" response code, the Provider may also return any of the following in the HTTP response body:

- A representation of the *Job* Resource, if one was created.
- A partial representation of the response message as if the operation were a synchronous operation. For example, when creating a new *Machine*, the response message may include a partial representation of the new *Machine* in the response message. The list of attributes of the Resource that is returned is implementation specific and based upon how much information is available at the time the response message is generated, but it shall be consistent with the definition of the full Resource representation. In the case of a create operation, the Provider may also include an HTTP Location header referencing the "to be created" Resource, if it is known.
- An empty response body.

Note that the decision as to whether any particular operation is synchronous or asynchronous is at the server's discretion.

4.2.2 Error handling

In cases where an error occurs during the processing of a request, the Provider shall include a representation of a *Job* Resource describing the status of the failed operation. This representation of a *Job* shall be included even in cases where the Provider does not expose *Job* Resources. This is to ensure that Consumers are provided with sufficient information, in a consistent manner, as to the reason for the failure. A transient *Job* Resource may be created by the Provider just for error reporting. In case a *Job* Resource is not intended to be used for more than error reporting, the returned "id" attribute shall be an empty path (i.e., "") and the *nestedJobs* array shall be expanded (see 4.1.6.4) to inline the representation of the pseudo subordinate *Jobs*.

4.3 OVF support

The *Open Virtualization Format (OVF) Specification* ([DSP0243](#)) describes an open, secure, portable, efficient, and extensible format for the packaging and distribution of software to be run in virtual machines. OVF support in CIMI allows an OVF package to be used to create CIMI management resources by importing the package. Additionally, CIMI management resources can be exported into an OVF package. The actual support for the OVF package is typically provided by a hypervisor that is managed by the CIMI provider. The import of an OVF package exposes CIMI specific constructs and parameters as a result of the import without altering the original OVF package. Thus the CIMI resources that are created as a result of the import form a "View" of what the hypervisor did; however, other (non-CIMI mapped) information from the OVF package may have been used by the hypervisor in its import. This other information is implementation dependent and is not further touched upon by this standard.

An OVF package can support single virtual machines (VMs) corresponding to a single CIMI *Machine* or *MachineTemplate* (see clause 5.14.1) or may also support a complex hierarchy of VMs and their related Resources corresponding to a CIMI *System* or *SystemTemplate* (see clause 5.13.1) and related CIMI management resources.

1151 OVF support is covered in more detail in ANNEX A.

1152 **5 Model**

1153 This model assumes that a business relationship has already been established between the Consumer
1154 and the Provider. This relationship may include financial terms, creating separately administered clouds
1155 that the consuming organization is paying for, and the establishment of authentication credentials to
1156 access the administrative entry point for each cloud. The scope of this model is one separately
1157 administered cloud.

1158 The CIMI model is described here by using a tabular representation. Each table is modeling a significant
1159 cloud resource for which independent access and manipulation is expected. Relationships between
1160 resources use a referential mechanism based on unique identifiers that is expected to be already
1161 supported by the implementation environment and protocol (e.g., URIs for HTTP).

1162 The model is self-describing and allows for querying its own metadata, e.g., to discover which extensions
1163 have been implemented. The model is also extensible in different ways (see clause 5.1).

1164 **5.1 Extensibility**

1165 There are two types of extensibility mechanisms defined by the CIMI model; one is intended for use by
1166 Consumers whilst the other is to be used by Providers.

1167 The first allows for a CIMI Consumer to add additional data to a Resource. Each Resource in the CIMI
1168 model has an attribute called "properties". Consumers, when creating or updating a Resource, may
1169 store any name/value pair in the `properties` attribute. CIMI Providers shall store and return these
1170 values to the Consumer. There is no obligation for the Provider to understand or take any action based on
1171 these values; they are there for the Consumer's convenience. Providers shall not add elements to this
1172 `properties` attribute.

1173 The second type of extensibility mechanism allows for Provider defined extensions and this specification
1174 includes the `ResourceMetadata` Resource for this purpose. `ResourceMetadata` may be used to

- 1175 • express constraints on the existing CIMI defined Resource attributes (e.g., express a maximum
1176 for the 'cpu' attribute of the `MachineConfiguration` Resource)
- 1177 • introduce new attributes for CIMI defined Resources together with any constraints governing
1178 these (e.g., a new 'location' attribute for the `Volume` Resource that takes values from a defined
1179 set of strings)
- 1180 • introduce new operations for any of the CIMI defined Resources (e.g., define a new 'compress'
1181 operation for the `Volume` Resource)
- 1182 • express any Provider specific capabilities or features (e.g., the length of time that a `Job`
1183 Resource is retained after `Job` completion and before this is deleted)

1184 It is recommended that Providers use the `ResourceMetadata` Resource to advertise these attributes,
1185 operations, and capabilities along with any constraints that might need to be understood by Consumers.
1186 The `ResourceMetadata` Resource is defined in clause 5.8.

1187 **5.2 Identifiers**

1188 All identifiers (e.g., Resource names, attributes, operations, parameter names) defined by this
1189 specification, or defined by the way of an extension, shall adhere to the following rules:

- 1190 • Identifier names shall be treated as case sensitive.

1191 • Identifier names shall only use the following set of characters:

- 1192 – Uppercase ASCII (U+0041 through U+005A)
- 1193 – Lowercase ASCII (U+0061 through U+007A)
- 1194 – Digits (U+0030 through U+0039)
- 1195 – Underscore (U+005F)

1196 • Identifier names shall not start with a Digit (U+0030 through U+0039).

1197 Note that these rules do not apply to the "name" common attribute defined in clause 5.7.1.

1198 5.3 Attribute constraints

1199 Each attribute of any Resource is further qualified by a set of Boolean constraints. In particular, These
 1200 constraints govern the level of support and access for an attribute, for either the Provider or the
 1201 Consumer. Such constraints may be explicitly stated in the model itself for some Resources (i.e.
 1202 determined by this specification), but in general are specified in the metadata Resource associated with a
 1203 Resource (i.e. configured in the implementation). These constraints are:

1204 **providerMandatory: (true/false)**

1205 If 'true', indicates that the attribute shall be supported by the Provider, i.e. always included as part of the
 1206 Resource representation sent from Providers to Consumers, except if the attribute is empty. See clause
 1207 5.5.15 regarding empty attribute values. If present on a nested attribute, this attribute is required to be
 1208 supported only if the parent attribute is supported. Default is 'true'.

1209 **consumerMandatory: (true/false)**

1210 If 'true', indicates, the attribute shall always be supported by the Consumer when using such a Resource,
 1211 i.e. included as part of the Resource representation sent from Consumers to Providers, except if the
 1212 attribute is empty. See clause 5.5.15 regarding empty attribute values. If present on a nested attribute,
 1213 this attribute is required to be supported only if the parent attribute is supported. Default is 'false'.

1214 **mutable: (true/false)**

1215 If 'true', indicates that the attribute may be modified after initial creation of the Resource. If 'false', the
 1216 attribute value will never change until the Resource is deleted. When the constrained attribute is a
 1217 reference to another Resource, mutable = 'false' only means this reference will never change. It does not
 1218 prevent updates on the referenced resource itself. Note that mutable = 'false' also implies
 1219 consumerWritable = 'false'. Default is 'true'.

1220 **consumerWritable: (true/false)**

1221 If 'true' – and if mutable is also 'true' - indicates that the attribute may be directly set or updated by
 1222 Consumers (update request), after creation of the Resource. Note that some Consumer operations on the
 1223 Resource may have the indirect effect of changing some attribute values (this is obvious for the *updated*
 1224 attribute, for example, or for the *state* of a Resource), but these are not considered as "direct" updates.
 1225 Consequently such indirect updates are not precluded by consumerWritable = 'false'. Also, when the
 1226 constrained attribute is a reference to another Resource, consumerWritable = 'false' only means this
 1227 reference cannot be changed by the Consumer. It does not prevent updates on the referenced resource
 1228 itself. Default is 'true'.

1229 Additional requirements for Provider and Consumer:

- 1230 • If a Provider receives a message containing an unknown or unsupported attribute, it shall reject
 1231 the request.
- 1232 • If a Consumer receives a message containing an unknown or unsupported attribute, it shall
 1233 silently ignore the attribute. However, Consumers are required to include those attributes in

messages sent back to the Provider. Note in these cases the Consumer is not required to understand or process the unsupported attribute, but merely echo it back to the Provider

5.4 Serialization of Resources

The serialization of Resource instances in the model follow these conventions. Consider the serialization of a Resource named "MyResource":

JSON serialization:

The Resource is serialized as an object wrapping all its attributes, but without a wrapper name. The Resource includes a `resourceURI` with a URI for the type of Resource being serialized. For example:

```
{ "resourceURI": "http://example.com/MyResource",
  "attribute": "value"
}
```

XML serialization:

The Resource is serialized as an element with name equal to the Resource name; for example:

```
<MyResource xmlns="http://example.com">
  <attribute> value </attribute>
</MyResource>
```

The serialization of attributes in a Resource follows the rules for the serialization of each data type, listed in section 5.5.

5.5 Data types and their serialization

Unless specifically asked to not include certain attributes in the Resource representation, the absence of an optional attribute in the representation means that the attribute has no value (i.e., is undefined), meaning there is no notion of an optional attribute having an implied value. Note that a client cannot distinguish (from just looking at the returned representation) whether a particular attribute is not supported from one that does not exist. Likewise, an absent attribute from a Resource representation as the input to an update operation means that the Consumer is requesting that the Provider remove that attribute.

The following clauses describe the data types and values that are used within the model definition tables.

5.5.1 boolean

A value as defined by `xs:boolean` per [XML Schema – Part 2](#), with the exception that the only allowable values are either "true" or "false." The value is case sensitive.

If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *boolean*

If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:boolean*

5.5.2 dateTime

A value as defined by `xs:dateTime` per [XML Schema – Part 2](#), which is consistent with DMTF DSP4004 and ISO 8601. The timestamp should preserve time zone information, i.e., include a local time component and an offset from UTC.

1270 Any constraints on the specific ranges allowed for any particular attribute are specified by that attribute's
 1271 definition or at runtime by the Provider by the way of the metadata discovery mechanisms defined by this
 1272 specification.

1273 For example, Monday, May 25, 2012, at 1:30:15 PM EST is represented as:

1274 `2012-05-25T13:30:15-05:00`

1275 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *string*

1276 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:dateTime*

1277 **5.5.3 duration**

1278 A value as defined by *xs:duration* per [XML Schema – Part 2](#). Any constraints on the specific ranges
 1279 allowed for any particular attribute shall be specified by that attribute's definition or at runtime by the
 1280 Provider by the way of the metadata discovery mechanisms defined by this specification.

1281 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *string*

1282 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:duration*

1283 **5.5.4 integer**

1284 A value as defined by *xs:integer* per [XML Schema – Part 2](#). Any constraints on the specific ranges
 1285 allowed for any particular attribute shall be specified by that attribute's definition or at runtime by the
 1286 Provider by the way of the metadata discovery mechanisms defined by this specification.

1287 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *number*

1288 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:integer*

1289 **5.5.5 string**

1290 A value as defined by *xs:string* per [XML Schema – Part 2](#). Any constraints on this type for any particular
 1291 attribute shall be specified by that attribute's definition or at runtime by the Provider by the way of the
 1292 metadata discovery mechanisms defined by this specification.

1293 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *string*

1294 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:string*

1295 If serializing an attribute of type string, the serialization shall omit this attribute in case of an empty string.

1296 **5.5.6 ref**

1297 A reference to another Resource.

1298 References allow for Consumers to navigate to Resources. By starting at the Cloud Entry Point and
 1299 following the references that appear in the retrieved Resources, Consumers are able to recursively
 1300 discover and navigate to all other Resources.

1301 As a general rule, if an attribute is of type "ref", its value shall be held by an attribute named "href"
 1302 (both in JSON and XML).

1303 **JSON serialization:**

1304 In the JSON serialization the href property appears as of type "string." If an attribute is of type
 1305 "ref", the name of this attribute shall appear as a key, with the href property as a nested value. For
 1306 example, a Resource attribute "myvolume" of type "ref" is serialized as:

```
1307     "myvolume": { "href": string }
```

1308 XML serialization:

1309 In the XML serialization the `href` attribute appears as type `"xs:anyURI"`. If an attribute is of type
 1310 `"ref"`, the name of this attribute shall appear as name of an XML element with the `href` property as an
 1311 (XML) attribute. For example, a Resource attribute `"myvolume"` of type `"ref"` is serialized as:

```
1312 <myvolume href="xs:anyURI"/>
```

1313 References in both JSON and XML have an extensibility point that allows for additional information (such
 1314 as the target Resource to be included "by value") if supported. For convenience, the JSON and XML
 1315 representations, as shown above, exclude the implicit extensibility points that would allow for the
 1316 attributes of the target Resource to be included if desired. So, more accurately the above representations
 1317 might be written as follows:

1318 For JSON:

```
1319     "myvolume": { "href": string, ... }
```

1320 and in XML:

```
1321 <myvolume href="xs:anyURI"> xs:any* </myvolume>
```

1322 However, for brevity the extensibility points are excluded from the serialization of the Resources.

1323 5.5.7 map

1324 A list of key/value pairs. The same "key" shall not be used more than once within an attribute. The "key" is
 1325 case sensitive.

1326 If serializing an attribute of type map, the serialization shall omit this attribute in case of an empty map.

1327 5.5.8 structure

1328 Attributes of this type are complex attributes made up of a set of nested attributes. For each attribute of
 1329 this type, there is an additional table defining those nested attributes.

1330 A nested structure can be considered a complex type definition. Structures may be named or unnamed.
 1331 **Error! Reference source not found.** is an example of named structure:

1332 **Table 2 – Named structure**

Name	summary	
Attribute	Type	Description
low	number	Number of "low" occurrences
medium	number	Number of "medium" occurrences
high	number	Number of "high" occurrences
critical	number	Number of "critical" occurrences

1333 JSON serialization:

1334 In JSON, the name of the structure (i.e., of the type it represents) never appears. In other words, whether
 1335 the structure is named or not does not matter. An attribute named `"systemIncidents"` of type
 1336 `"summary"` (as above) is serialized as follows:

```
1337     "systemIncidents": {
1338         "low": number,
1339         "medium": number,
1340         "high": number,
```

```

1341     "critical": number
1342   }

```

1343 XML serialization:

1344 In XML, the name of the structure (i.e., of the type it represents) never appears. In other words, whether
 1345 the structure is named or not does not matter. The same previous "systemIncidents" example is
 1346 serialized so that the structure sub-attributes become XML attributes of a <systemIncidents> XML
 1347 element wrapper:

```

1348     <systemIncidents low="xs:integer" medium="xs:integer" high="xs:integer"
1349       critical="xs:integer"/>

```

1350 **NOTE** A large number of sub-attributes of atomic type in a structure may be represented alternatively as XML child
 1351 elements for better readability. Both options are available; however, the same structure shall be serialized the same
 1352 way across Resources.

1353 5.5.9 byte[]

1354 An arbitrary set of bytes meant to represent a block of binary data. Any constraints on this type for any
 1355 particular attribute shall be specified by that attribute's definition or at runtime by the Provider by the way
 1356 of the metadata discovery mechanisms defined by this specification.

1357 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *string*

1358 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:hexBinary*

1359 5.5.10 URI

1360 The format and syntax of the attributes of type "URI" is defined by [RFC3986](#).

1361 Unless otherwise noted, this specification does not mandate whether Providers use relative or absolute
 1362 URI in the HTTP response bodies.

1363 If URIs are specified as relative URIs, they shall be relative to the *baseURI*.

1364 The algorithm used for converting a relative URI to an absolute URI shall be as described in section 5.2 of
 1365 [RFC3986](#). **Error! Reference source not found.** illustrates how relative URIs are resolved against base
 1366 URIs:

1367 **Table 3 – Converting a relative URI to an absolute URI**

Base URI	Relative URI	Absolute URI
http://example.com/	p1/file	http://example.com/p1/file
http://example.com/c1/	p1/file	http://example.com/c1/p1/file
http://example.com/c1/c2/	p1/file	http://example.com/c1/c2/p1/file

1368 If relative URIs are used, the *baseURI* shall end with a trailing slash and relative URIs shall not begin
 1369 with a leading slash. This format is consistent with most URI resolve utilities and produces the same
 1370 results as a simple string concatenation algorithm.

1371 If serialized in JSON, these values shall be of JSON type: *string*

1372 If serialized in XML, these values shall be of XML Schema type: *xs:anyURI*

1373 5.5.11 Array

1374 An array represents an ordered list of items of the same type. An array shall always appear as an
 1375 attribute of a Resource, and is only accessible as such (it is not a separately addressable Resource). If a

Resource is deleted, the items in its arrays shall also be deleted. However, in case these items were just references to other Resources, these referred Resources are not affected. (See the semantics of references in 5.7.)

Attributes that are arrays are defined by using the notation `itemType[]`, where `itemType` is the type name for each item of the array. If the type is a structure, not a simple data type, it is recommended as a convention in the model that the name of an array be the plural of a name that characterizes each item. For example, an array of volume items or of references to these may be named "volumes."

JSON serialization:

Within this specification, arrays in JSON are serialized with a wrapper property. The wrapper name shall be same as the attribute name for the array. For example, a "things" attribute of type "thing[]" is serialized as:

```
"things" : [
  { ... }, +
] ?
```

If the items in the array are structures, the structure name shall not be present in the JSON serialization.

In the case of an array of references, i.e., where the "ref" type applies to each element of the array, each element shall simply be serialized as an href property within a JSON array. For example, an array "things" of type "ref[]" is serialized as:

```
"things": [
  { "href": string }, +
] ?
```

NOTE If serializing arrays, conformant implementations shall not include empty arrays (i.e., arrays that contain no child properties) in the JSON serialization. Notice that the child of the "things" property is defined with a "+", meaning at least one child is required. This requirement ensures that the JSON serialization is minimized and only includes the wrapping "things" element if, and only if, there is at least one "thing" in the array.

XML serialization:

The XML serialization of arrays requires each item of the array to be represented as an element. These elements shall be consecutive and contiguous in the serialization and the name of each element (tag name) shall be the name of the element type (the name that appears before "[]" in the array type). As in JSON, the serialized array has a wrapper element of same name as the array attribute name. For example, a "things" attribute shall be serialized as a list of items named "thing":

```
<things>
  <thing>
    ...
  </thing> *
</things>
```

In the case of an array of references, i.e., where the "ref" type applies to each element of the array, the array is serialized as a list of XML elements without wrapper. Each element is named per an array "item name" specified in the attribute's definition. For example, an array "things" of type "ref[]" where the array "item name" is "thing" is serialized as:

```
<thing href="xs:anyURI"/> +
```

5.5.12 Collection

A Collection is a group of Resources of the same type. In contrast with arrays, Collections are themselves Resources that have their own URI and can be independently accessed. Collections also allow for an optimized and convenient interaction pattern by providing a specialized set of operations that avoid replacing a large number of items when updating the set, as with arrays.

This specification uses Collections if the set of grouped items is modified often and potentially by multiple Consumers. Conversely, arrays are used if it is expected that the list of items is not modified often or can be easily modified by substitution of the entire list, and thus the overhead of managing these items as separate Resources might be unjustified and burdensome.

An item in a Collection, i.e. a Collection item, is an embedded structure that contains a reference to a Resource and optionally additional attributes (see "accessory" attributes, defined later). For convenience, the Resource referred to by a Collection item is called here a Resource item of the Collection.

A Resource may be referenced by more than one Collection. If such a Resource is deleted, every Collection that references this Resource shall remove the corresponding item. While different Collections contain entries of different Resource types, all Collections follow the pattern described below:

- A Collection shall contain an `id` attribute that acts as a "self pointer." Retrieving the data at this reference shall return the Collection. In the XML representation, each Collection shall be wrapped by a `<Collection>` element.
- A Collection shall contain a `count` attribute that indicates the number of Resources in the Collection at the time the Collection was queried.
- Adding new Resources to the Collection shall be done either via the "add" operation defined within the Collection (when the Resource is also created) or via the "insert" operation (when the Resource already exists).

Deleting an item from the Collection shall be done either via a "delete" operation on the Resource item itself (if the Resource has to be discarded) or via the "remove" Collection operation (if the Resource must still exist outside the Collection). Collections that are attributes of other Resources are represented with attribute type `"collection[itemType]"`. The Resource type of the Collection items are specified inside the brackets; for example an attribute that is a Collection of Machines is expressed as `"collection[Machine]"`. Attributes of such types are serialized as a reference to a Collection Resource instead of holding the Collection itself as value. For brevity, while these attributes are "references" the word "ref" or "reference" does not appear in the model definition tables - instead the type of such an attribute is making abstraction of the reference and more explicitly shows as `"collection[itemType]"`.

In the serializations below, the Collection items are represented by items in the *ResourceSpecificGroupName* JSON array, and by *ResourceSpecificElementName* elements in the XML representation.

Serialization:

The serialization of Collections shall adhere to the following pattern:

JSON serialization:

```
{ "resourceURI": string,
  "id": string,
  "updated": string, ?
  "parent": string, ?
  "count": number,
```

```

1462     "resourceSpecificGroupingName": [
1463         { "resourceURI": string,
1464           "id": string,
1465           "name": string, ?
1466           "description": string, ?
1467           "created": string, ?
1468           "updated": string, ?
1469           "parent": string, ?
1470           "properties": { string: string, + }, ?
1471           ... resource specific data ...
1472           "operations": [
1473               { "rel": "edit", "href": string }, ?
1474               { "rel": "delete", "href": string } ?
1475           ] ?
1476           ...
1477         } +
1478     ], ?
1479     "operations": [
1480         { "rel": "add", "href": string } ?
1481         { "rel": "insert", "href": string } ?
1482         { "rel": "remove", "href": string } ?
1483     ]
1484     ...
1485 }

```

XML serialization:

```

1487 <Collection resourceURI="xs:anyURI" xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
1488     <id> xs:anyURI </id>
1489     <updated> xs:dateTime </updated> ?
1490     <parent> xs:anyURI </parent> ?
1491     <count> xs:integer </count>
1492     <resourceSpecificGroupingName>
1493         <ResourceSpecificElementName>
1494             <id> xs:anyURI </id>
1495             <name> xs:string </name> ?
1496             <description> xs:string </description> ?
1497             <created> xs:dateTime </created> ?
1498             <updated> xs:dateTime </updated> ?
1499             <parent> xs:anyURI </parent> ?
1500             <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
1501             ... resource specific data ...

```

```

1502     <operations>
1503         <operation rel="edit" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1504         <operation rel="delete" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1505     </operations>
1506     <xs:any>*
1507 </ResourceSpecificElementName> *
1508 </resourceSpecificGroupingName>
1509
1510 <operations>
1511     <operation rel="add" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1512     <operation rel="insert" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1513     <operation rel="remove" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1514 </operations>
1515 <xs:any>*
1516 </Collection>

```

Where the `resourceURI` attributes shall contain the Collection or Resource specific URIs for that type of Collection, and `resourceSpecificGroupingName` and `ResourceSpecificElementName` shall be replaced with the name of the Collection-specific Resource name, e.g., `machines` in JSON or `Machine` in XML.

The above serialization shows that each entry in a Collection may contain “resource specific data” beside the reference to the Resource item and the common attributes. This placeholder represents two kinds of data:

- a) Optionally some *accessory attributes* that represent accessory information for the use of this reference in the context of the Resource owning that Collection (the accessory attributes) – e.g., the “initial location” of a referenced `Volume`, in a Collection of `Volumes` associated with a `Machine`. Accessory attributes – if any - are part of the definition of each specific Collection..
- b) All or a subset of the attributes of the corresponding Resource items. How much of the Resource item is expanded in the serialization of the Collection is controlled by expansion mechanisms described later.

If accessory attributes exist for items in a Collection, the “*resourceSpecificGroupingName*” or “*ResourceSpecificElementName*” is not just identifying the Resource type of Collection items, but is a unique name specific to this combination of accessory attributes and Resource type – e.g., for `Volumes` with initial location, it may be “`locatedVolume`”. Also the `resourceURI` of the Collection is unique to this combination. Because of this accessory attribute, the Collection of `Volumes` is said to be “enhanced”, as opposed to “basic” for a Collection without accessory attribute.

The serialization of Collections follows these additional rules:

- A Provider may limit the number of Resources returned in the Collection. The Consumer can determine this has occurred by comparing the number of returned Resources with the value of the “Count” attribute and any Collection subsetting query parameters it specified. In this case, the Consumer is advised to specify filter query parameters (see 4.1.6.1) to reduce the number of entries returned, or retrieve them in batches by issuing multiple requests with Collection subsetting query parameters (see 4.1.6.2)

- As with all Resources in the CIMI model, each Resource in the Collection shall have an `id` attribute that acts as a "self pointer." Retrieving the data at this reference shall return just that one Resource and not any parent Resource, such as the Collection or array attribute.
- The serialization of a Collection may be controlled (see 4.1.6.4 `$expand` query parameter) to show more or less of each Resource item. By default, each entry in the Collection will show just a reference (URL) to the Resource item, along with the "common" attributes of the Resource item. Alternatively, the Resource item may be expanded partially or fully when querying the Collection.
- As with all arrays, if there are no Resources in the Collection, the serialization of the list shall be omitted.

5.5.12.1 Adding an item to a Collection

Invoking the "add" operation of a Collection shall create a new Resource and add it to the Collection. The contents of the request body shall be either a representation of the new Resource being added to the Collection, or a representation of the Template associated with the new Resource being created and resource specific data attributes.

If creating a new Resource the "add" operation shall contain:

- The "common attributes" as defined by clause 5.7.1
- The Resource specific data needed to create it. This data shall either be a reference to the Resource-specific Template Resource or the Resource-specific Template Resource itself inlined.
- Accessory attributes—if any—that represent accessory information for the use of the reference in the context of the Resource owning that Collection (the associative attributes)
- In the XML case, a wrapper element (named after the pattern `<ResourceNameCreate>`)

For example, to create a new `Machine` (which requires the use of a Template) and add it to the `MachineCollection`, the "add" operation of the `MachineCollection` shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```
{ "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineCreate", ?
  "name": string, ?
  "description": string, ?
  "properties": { string: string, + }, ?
  "machineTemplate": { "href": string ?}
  ...
}
```

XML serialization:

```
<MachineCreate xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
  <name> xs:string </name> ?
  <description> xs:string </description> ?
  <properties>
    <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
  </properties>
```



```

1585     <machineTemplate href="xs:anyURI"? />
1586     <xs:any>*
1587 </MachineCreate>

```

The MachineCollection has a new Machine:

JSON serialization:

```

1590 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine",
1591   "id": string,
1592   "name": string,
1593   ...
1594 }

```

XML serialization:

```

1596 <Machine xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
1597   <id> xs:anyURI </id>
1598   <name> xs:string </name>
1599   ...
1600 </Machine>

```

The processing of the "add" operation shall adhere to the semantics defined in clause 4.2.1.1.

Regardless of whether a Template is used, the "add" operation shall create the new Resource and add it to the Collection and a reference (URI) to the new entry shall be returned in the response message in the HTTP Location header.

5.5.12.2 Inserting an item in a Collection

Invoking the "insert" operation of a Collection shall add to the Collection a new reference to an existing Resource. The contents of the request body shall specify the URL of the existing Resource being added and the accessory attributes in case of an "enhanced" collection.

In order to add an existing Volume to the volumes Collection of a Machine, the request body of the "insert" operation shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```

1612 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
1613   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/insert",
1614   "initialLocation": string,
1615   "volume": { "href": string }
1616 }

```

XML serialization:

```

1618 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
1619   <action>http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/insert</action>
1620   <initialLocation> xs:string </initialLocation>
1621   <volume href="xs:string"/>
1622 </Action>

```

Note that “initialLocation” is an accessory attribute to each reference of Volume. Because of this addition, the type of the collection items is distinguished from Volume, and called here locatedVolume. The definition of the volumes Collection of the Machine Resource describes the accessory attribute(s) for this Collection.

5.5.12.3 Removing an item from a Collection

Invoking the “remove” operation of a Collection shall delete the specified item in the Collection, i.e. the Resource reference along with accessory attributes if any, without destroying the referenced Resource item itself. The contents of the request body shall be the URL of the Resource item being removed.

In order to remove a Volume from the volumes Collection of a Machine, the request body of the “remove” operation shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```
{ "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
  "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/remove",
  "volume": { "href": string }
}
```

XML serialization:

```
<Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
  <action>http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/remove</action>
  <volume href="xs:string"/>
</Action>
```

Removing the referenced Resource (here a Volume) deletes the related entry from the Collection. This deletes the reference but not the Resource itself.

5.5.12.4 Deleting an item in a Collection

Deleting the Resource referenced by a Collection item via a DELETE operation on the Resource itself (in the previous example, a Volume) also deletes the related entry from the Collections that reference this Resource – i.e., it has the effect of a “remove” on the Collection, in addition to deleting the referenced Resource.

5.5.13 "Any" type

Some attributes are polymorphic and can hold various data types, the list of which is indicated in their description. In such cases, the type of the attribute shall be indicated as “any” in the model representation.

5.5.14 valueScope

The valueScope type is a specialized map. Its goal is to define possible values for a list of attributes of a Resource. The possible values for an attribute are called the “value scope” of the attribute, and a combination of attribute value scopes (in form of a map) in a Resource or in the ResourceMetadata is called the value scope of the Resource.

Each item in a valueScope is a key/value pair where:

- The key is the name of an attribute of a Resource – or “**scoped attribute**” – for which a set of possible values is defined.
- The value is a structure that defines the “**scope**”, i.e., a range, an enumeration or a single assigned value for the scoped attribute.

The scope structure:

A “scope” structure – or the value part of a key-value item in a valueScope – can take one of following forms:

- 1) An assigned single value, along with its (optional) `units`, e.g., for a scoped attribute named “cpu”:

```
"cpu": { "value": 2000, "units": "megahertz" }
```

In the above, `value` and `units` are reserved keywords for defining the value scope.

- 2) A range of values, along with its optional `units`, and an optional `increment` e.g., for a scoped attribute named “memory”. The range may be open-ended: either the `minimum` or the `maximum` may be missing. The `increment` specifies the allowed values starting from the `minimum` and upward - i.e., the allowed values are of the form: `minimum+N*(increment)`, where $N \geq 0$, or starting from the `maximum` and downward in case there is no `minimum`, i.e., allowed values are of the form: `maximum-N*(increment)`.

```
"memory": { "minimum": 4000, "maximum": 10000, "units": "kibibytes", "default": 4000, "increment": 2000 }
```

In the above, `minimum`, `maximum`, `default`, `increment` and `units` are reserved keywords for defining the value scope.

- 3) An enumeration (or `values`), along with its (optional) `units`, e.g., for a scoped attribute named “cpuArch”:

```
"cpuArch": { "values": [ "68000", "Alpha", "ARM", " PA_RISC"], "default": "PA_RISC" }
```

- 4) Simply a required `units`, e.g., for a scoped attribute named “capacity”:

```
"capacity": { "units": "megabytes" }
```

- 5) Any of the above, applying to the items in a collection, e.g., for a range of values that applies to the accessory attribute named “remoteLocation” of type URI for every item in a collection named `machines`:

```
"machines": { "item": { "remoteLocation": { "values": [ "URI1", "URI2", "URI3"], "default": "URI1" }}} }
```

In the above, `item`, `values` and `default` are reserved keywords for defining the value scope.

If a `valueScope` is associated with a Resource type, it shall be in form of an attribute named “`vscope`”, of type array of `valueScope` (i.e., `valueScope[]`).

An example of `valueScope` for the MachineConfiguration Resource:

```
"vscope" : [ {
  "cpu": { "value": 1 },
  "memory": { "minimum": 4, "maximum": 32, "units": "GbB", "default": 4, "increment": 2 },
  "cpuArch": { "values": [ "68000", "Alpha", "ARM", " PA_RISC", "i5"], "default": "i5" }
} ]
```

Semantics of valueScope array in a Resource

The value scope of a Resource shall be represented by an array of valueScope instances, even if in many cases this array will contain a single valueScope instance. This allows for expressing dependencies between values of different attributes of a same Resource. In such cases, the scoped attributes of the Resource must satisfy either valueScope instance in this array.

In the following example, `vscope` is an array of two valueScope items:

```
"vscope": [ {
  "cpuSpeed": { "minimum": 2, "maximum": 4, "units": "GHz", "default": 2.5},
  "memory": { "minimum": 2000000, "maximum": 10000000, "units": "KbB", "increment":
2000000 },
  "cpuArch": { "value": "i5" }
}, {
  "memory": { "minimum": 4000000, "maximum": 32000000, "units": "KbB" },
  "cpuArch": { "values": [ "68000", "Alpha", " PA_RISC" ] }
} ]
```

This valueScope means that the Provider supports MachineConfigurations with either `cpuArch` of value `i5`, or of a value that is one of { `"68000"`, `"Alpha"`, `" PA_RISC"` }. In the first case (`i5`), the memory must be within the 2GbB-10GbB range and `cpuSpeed` must be between 2-4 GHz, while in the second case the memory must be within the 4GbB-32GbB range.

The following pseudo-schemas describe the serialization of the valueScope map in both JSON and XML:

JSON serialization:

```
( "value": any,
  "units": string ? ) |
( "values": [ any,+ ],
  "units": string ,?
  "default": string ? ) |
( "minimum": number, ?
  "maximum": number, ?
  "units": string ,?
  "default": number, ?
  "increment": number ? )
```

XML serialization:

```
( <value> xs:any </value>
  <units> xs:string </units> ? ) |
( <value> xs:any </value> +
  <units> xs:string </units> ?
  <default> xs:any </default> ? ) |
( <minimum> xs:integer </minimum> ?
  <maximum> xs:integer </maximum> ?
```

```

1744 <units> xs:string </units> ?
1745 <default> xs:integer </default> ?
1746 <increment> xs:integer </increment> ? )

```

1747 A Provider who supports value scopes shall set the ValueScopes capability (ResourceMetadata) to “true”.

1748 5.5.15 Empty attribute values

1749 Attributes of the following types are omitted in cases where they have an empty value: string, map, array,
 1750 and Collection. Apart from being “Provider optional” or “Consumer optional”, an empty value is the third
 1751 reason that the serialization schema contains an ‘?’ or an ‘*’ for an attribute.

1752 Other attribute types do not have empty values and shall not be omitted from the serialization for this
 1753 reason.

1754 5.6 Units

1755 Some of the Resources defined by this specification have attributes that describe an amount of
 1756 something that belongs to, or is associated with, that Resource. For example, the `Machine` Resource
 1757 has a `memory` attribute that describes "the size of the memory allocated to this machine." The allowable
 1758 units of these attributes are listed in **Error! Reference source not found..** Their meaning is defined in
 1759 [IEC 80000-13:2008](#). Their numerical equivalents are provided here for convenience:

1760 **Table 4 – Numerical equivalents for attributes**

String	Numerical Value	String	Numerical Value
kilobyte	10 ³	kibibyte	2 ¹⁰
megabyte	10 ⁶	mebibyte	2 ²⁰
gigabyte	10 ⁹	gibibyte	2 ³⁰
terabyte	10 ¹²	tebibyte	2 ⁴⁰
petabyte	10 ¹⁵	pebibyte	2 ⁵⁰
exabyte	10 ¹⁸	exbibyte	2 ⁶⁰
zettabyte	10 ²¹	zebibyte	2 ⁷⁰
yottabyte	10 ²⁴	yobibyte	2 ⁸⁰

1761 5.7 Resources

1762 CIMI Resources are representations of actual – either virtual or physical – resources available in a Cloud.
 1763 Resources are identified and separately accessible by their URI. Every Resource has a type which is
 1764 described in this section. A Resource type defines a set of attributes and of operations.

1765 5.7.1 Common Resource attributes

1766 Resources, except for the Collection Resource, shall support the following common attributes defined in
 1767 **Error! Reference source not found..** A Collection Resource shall support the `id` attribute, the `updated`
 1768 attribute and the `parent` attribute, as defined in Table 5.

1769 **Table 5 – Common attributes**

Attribute	Type	Description
id	URI	The unique URI identifying this Resource; assigned upon Resource creation. This attribute value shall be unique in the Provider's cloud. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: false consumerWritable: false
name	string	The human-readable name of this Resource; assigned by the creator

Attribute	Type	Description									
		as a part of the Resource creation input. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true									
description	string	The human-readable description of this Resource; assigned by the creator as a part of the Resource creation input. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true									
created	dateTime	The timestamp when this Resource was created. The format should be unambiguous, and the value is immutable . Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: false consumerWritable: false									
updated	dateTime	The time at which the last explicit attribute update was made on the Resource. The initial value is the time the resource is created. Note, while operations, such as "stop", do implicitly modify the 'state' attribute, they do not change the 'updated' time. Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: false									
parent	ref	A reference to a Resource of which this Resource is a child component (see "composition" relationship, section 5.10.2) – i.e. a reference to its first parent Resource. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true									
properties	map	<p>A map of key/value pairs (each entry called a "property"), some of which may control one or more aspects this Resource. Properties may also serve as an extension point, allowing Consumers to record additional information about the Resource.</p> <p>The same "key" shall not be used more than once within a "properties" attribute.</p> <p>Each property shall contain the following nested data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th>Type</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>key</td><td>string</td><td>The name of the property.</td></tr> <tr> <td>value</td><td>string</td><td>The value of the property.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p>	Name	Type	Description	key	string	The name of the property.	value	string	The value of the property.
Name	Type	Description									
key	string	The name of the property.									
value	string	The value of the property.									

Attribute	Type	Description
resourceMetadata	ref	<p>A reference to a ResourceMetadata instance associated with this Resource and governing the attributes, operations and capabilities concerning this Resource.</p> <p>Constraints:</p> <p>providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: false</p>

1770 The following pseudo-schemas describe the serialization of these attributes in both JSON and XML:

1771 **JSON serialization:**

```
1772 "id": string,
1773 "name": string, ?
1774 "description": string, ?
1775 "created": string, ?
1776 "updated": string, ?
1777 "properties": { string: string, + }, ?
1778 "resourceMetadata" : ["href": string, * ], ?
```

1779 **XML serialization:**

```
1780 <id> xs:anyURI </id>
1781 <name> xs:string </name> ?
1782 <description> xs:string </description> ?
1783 <created> xs:dateTime </created> ?
1784 <updated> xs:dateTime </updated> ?
1785 <properties>
1786   <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
1787 </properties> ?
1788 <resourceMetadata href="xs:string" /> ?
```

1789 **5.8 Operations**

1790 All Resource operations defined by this specification are optional for Providers to support. Consumers, by
1791 the way of examination of a Resource's ResourceMetadata, can determine which operations are
1792 supported. However, even for those operations that are supported Consumers still need to examine each
1793 Resource's representation to determine which operations are supported at that moment. Whether an
1794 operation is supported is based on a number of factors, including the state of the Resource and access
1795 control rights of the Consumer. Also see clause 4.2. Operations and states are coupled; i.e., if
1796 implementing a state-changing Resource operation defined in this specification, the corresponding
1797 state(s) shall also be implemented. See the Resource-specific "Operations" clauses for additional detail.

1798 The "State" attribute of Resources that have this attribute shall only change value if

- 1799 • an operation is performed on this Resource and this operation requires a state change, or
- 1800 • an error occurred, in this case the "State" attribute shall obtain the value "ERROR".

For example, for a 'start' operation on a `Machine` both the `STARTING` and the `STARTED` states are required to be supported by the `Machine`, while the `Machine` can only leave the `STARTED` state after another state changing operation is requested, unless an error occurs.

Providers can define additional operations and states. Such extensions shall fall into one of these categories:

- a) A new operation that starts from a CIMI-defined state, or leads to a CIMI-defined state, or both. In the latter case, if a CIMI-defined operation already exists for this transition between two CIMI-defined states, it shall also be supported by the Provider in addition to the new operation.
- b) A new Resource state. In that case, a new operation that leads to that state shall also be created. In other words, a Provider-defined operation has to be performed before a Provider-defined state can be reached.
- c) A new operation that transitions between two Provider-defined states.

5.9 Alternative model formats

It is expected that this specification is implemented by using a variety of technologies. As a convenience, the definition of the model elements are provided in alternative formats that are easily consumable by technology-specific tooling.

In the event of inconsistencies between the various formats, the normative text within this specification takes precedence over the XML Schemas and alternative formats, which in turn take precedence over examples.

5.10 Relationships between Resources

5.10.1 Referencing across Resources

Resources may refer each other. This referencing expresses a directional relationship in which there is a *referring* Resource and a *referred* Resource. Depending on the cardinality of such relationships, there are two representations:

- For 1-to-1 referencing, the URL of the referred Resource appears as an attribute in the referring Resource.
- For 1-to-n referencing, the referred Resources (all of the same type) are grouped in a Collection, the URL of which appears as an attribute in the referring Resource. In that case, the *referring* Resource does not refer directly to the referred Resources, but instead to a Collection Resource that contains references to the *referred* Resources.

If a *referred* Resource is deleted but not the *referring* Resource(s), then in case of a 1-to-1 relationship the reference shall be set to empty in every *referring* Resource, and in case of a 1-to-n relationship the reference shall be removed from any Collection where it appears as an item.

5.10.2 Composition Relationship between Resources

A Resource is a child component of another Resource if its `parent` attribute refers to the latter Resource. This relationship is transitive.

If a Resource is deleted, its child component Resource(s) is(are) also automatically deleted.

In case of a Collection Resource that is referred by a Resource R, expressing a composition relationship from the Collection Resource items to R is done by:

- (a) setting the `parent` attribute of each Resource item to the Collection Resource and
- (b) by setting the `parent` attribute of the Collection Resource to the Resource R.

A Resource is said to be parent of its children components.

In any Resource description R throughout this specification, an attribute of type “collection[]” refers to a Collection Resource that has the Resource R as a parent, unless indicated otherwise.

For example a Machine is parent of its related Disk Resources via the disks Collection: the parent attribute of a Disk is set to the disks Collection, and the parent attribute of the disks Collection is set to the Machine.

Some composed Resources – e.g. System - may have component Resources that are not their “children”. Such Resources are called associated components. Their parent attribute refers to another Resource or to the CEP, meaning the deletion of the composed Resource does not cause the deletion of its associated components, even if the associated components are still otherwise managed by the composed Resource.

5.11 Resource Metadata

Implementations of this specification should allow for Consumers to discover the metadata associated with any Resource under the Cloud Entry Point. Doing so allows for the discovery of Provider-defined constraints on the attributes or operations of a Resource as well as discovery of any new extension attributes or operations that the Provider may have defined.

A ResourceMetadata instance contains metadata governing the attribute status (optionality, value constraints, access), the available operations, and other Provider-specific capabilities or features for a Resource or a set of Resources, called the target Resource(s) for that ResourceMetadata instance. The target Resource contains a reference to its ResourceMetadata instance, which itself may be shared across several target Resources.

Any Resource under a CEP may have a ResourceMetadata instance associated with it. This association may be done in one of the following ways:

1. A ResourceMetadata instance is defined for all Resources of a same type under the CEP. In such a case the ResourceMetadata instance is added as a Resource item in the resourceMetadata collection unique to the CEP. Unless overridden, it applies to all Resources of the targeted type under this CEP.
2. A ResourceMetadata instance is defined for all Resources generated from a same template. In such a case, a Template-specific ResourceMetadata instance is provided and referred by this Template. This ResourceMetadata overrides any CEP-level ResourceMetadata (1) for the type of Resource generated from this Template.
3. A ResourceMetadata instance may be created for a single particular Resource instance, or may be associated on a per-Resource basis. Such an association requires an explicit modification of the resourceMetadata attribute of the target Resource, canceling any former value it may have been given at creation time, e.g. in above cases (1) or (2)

Each Resource's metadata shall contain the following pieces of information:

Table 6 – ResourceMetadata attributes

Name	ResourceMetadata	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata	
Attribute	Type	Description
typeURI	URI	A unique URI associated with, and denoting, the type of the described Resource target. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: true

Name	ResourceMetadata																												
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata																												
Attribute	Type	Description																											
		consumerWritable: true																											
name	<i>string</i>	The name of the Resource target type (e.g. Machine). Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: true consumerWritable: true																											
attributes	<i>attribute[]</i>	<p>A set of metadata associated with each attribute (or target attribute) of the Resource target, including the set of extension attributes not defined in this specification. The metadata for each attribute target shall contain the following nested data:</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Name</th><th colspan="2">attribute</th></tr> <tr> <th>Data</th><th>Type</th><th>Description</th></tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>name</td><td><i>string</i></td><td>The name of the target attribute.</td></tr> <tr> <td>namespace</td><td><i>URI</i></td><td>The namespace in which the target attribute is defined. It is recommended that a dereference of this URI returns information about the attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI defined attribute (i.e. an extension).</td></tr> <tr> <td>type</td><td><i>string</i></td><td>The data type of the target attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI-defined attribute (i.e. an extension).</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>provider Mandatory</i></td><td><i>boolean</i></td><td>If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Provider (if it has a non-empty value). See more precise definition in 5.3.</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>consumer Mandatory</i></td><td><i>boolean</i></td><td>If "true" Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Consumer. (if it has a non-empty value). Default is "false". See more precise definition in 5.3.</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>mutable</i></td><td><i>boolean</i></td><td>If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified after the Resource creation. See more precise definition in 5.3.</td></tr> <tr> <td><i>consumer Writable</i></td><td><i>boolean</i></td><td>If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified by the Consumer. See more precise definition in 5.3.</td></tr> </tbody> </table> <p>Every above attribute in the nested <i>attribute</i> table has the following constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p> <p>The constraints for the <i>attributes</i> attribute of ResourceMetadata are: Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p>	Name	attribute		Data	Type	Description	name	<i>string</i>	The name of the target attribute.	namespace	<i>URI</i>	The namespace in which the target attribute is defined. It is recommended that a dereference of this URI returns information about the attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI defined attribute (i.e. an extension).	type	<i>string</i>	The data type of the target attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI-defined attribute (i.e. an extension).	<i>provider Mandatory</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Provider (if it has a non-empty value). See more precise definition in 5.3.	<i>consumer Mandatory</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Consumer. (if it has a non-empty value). Default is "false". See more precise definition in 5.3.	<i>mutable</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified after the Resource creation. See more precise definition in 5.3.	<i>consumer Writable</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified by the Consumer. See more precise definition in 5.3.
Name	attribute																												
Data	Type	Description																											
name	<i>string</i>	The name of the target attribute.																											
namespace	<i>URI</i>	The namespace in which the target attribute is defined. It is recommended that a dereference of this URI returns information about the attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI defined attribute (i.e. an extension).																											
type	<i>string</i>	The data type of the target attribute. This shall not be present if describing a CIMI-defined attribute, but shall be present if describing a non-CIMI-defined attribute (i.e. an extension).																											
<i>provider Mandatory</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Provider (if it has a non-empty value). See more precise definition in 5.3.																											
<i>consumer Mandatory</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" Indicates that the target attribute shall be present in any representation of this Resource sent by a Consumer. (if it has a non-empty value). Default is "false". See more precise definition in 5.3.																											
<i>mutable</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified after the Resource creation. See more precise definition in 5.3.																											
<i>consumer Writable</i>	<i>boolean</i>	If "true" (by default) Indicates that the target attribute may be modified by the Consumer. See more precise definition in 5.3.																											
vscope	<i>valueScope[]</i>	The <i>vscope</i> attribute applies to the attributes of the described – or target – Resource. The target Resource shall be of the type identified by the <i>typeURI</i>																											

Name	ResourceMetadata																				
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata																				
Attribute	Type	Description																			
		<p>attribute. Consequently this value scope is about the list of attributes described in the <code>attributes</code> attribute.</p> <p>If an attribute of the target Resource is constrained by the <code>vscope</code>, a Consumer shall set a value (creation or update request) compatible with the value scope of this attribute. For any other case where the Consumer sets an incompatible value, the Provider shall return a 4xx error code.</p> <p>Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p>																			
capabilities	capability[]	<p>A set of Provider-defined metadata that can be used by Consumer to discover any capability or feature provided by this Provider.</p> <p>Each capability shall contain the following nested data:</p> <table><tr><td>Name</td><td colspan="2">capability</td></tr><tr><td>Data</td><td>Type</td><td>Description</td></tr><tr><td>name</td><td>string</td><td>The name of the capability.</td></tr><tr><td>uri</td><td>URI</td><td>A URI that uniquely identifies the capability at a global level. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true</td></tr><tr><td>description</td><td>string</td><td>The human-readable description of the semantic of the capability.</td></tr><tr><td>value</td><td>any</td><td>The value of the capability. The specific type varies depending on the definition of the capability. If not present the capability defaults to a "boolean" type with a value of "true" indicating that the specific capability is supported by the Provider. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true</td></tr></table> <p>Every above attribute in the nested <code>capability</code> table has the following constraints by default (unless overridden per attribute): providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p> <p>The constraints for the <code>capabilities</code> attribute of <code>ResourceMetadata</code> are: Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true</p>		Name	capability		Data	Type	Description	name	string	The name of the capability.	uri	URI	A URI that uniquely identifies the capability at a global level. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true	description	string	The human-readable description of the semantic of the capability.	value	any	The value of the capability. The specific type varies depending on the definition of the capability. If not present the capability defaults to a "boolean" type with a value of "true" indicating that the specific capability is supported by the Provider. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true
Name	capability																				
Data	Type	Description																			
name	string	The name of the capability.																			
uri	URI	A URI that uniquely identifies the capability at a global level. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true																			
description	string	The human-readable description of the semantic of the capability.																			
value	any	The value of the capability. The specific type varies depending on the definition of the capability. If not present the capability defaults to a "boolean" type with a value of "true" indicating that the specific capability is supported by the Provider. Constraints: consumerMandatory: true																			
actions	action[]	<p>A set of Provider-defined operations that can be used by consumers to act on the Resource. This set represents all operations defined for this described Resource type, which may be a superset of those operations a particular Consumer is actually allowed to use. The subset of allowed operations for a particular Consumer shall be those operations returned to this Consumer if querying an instance of the described Resource type. Note that this attribute is called "actions" so as not to conflict with the ResourceMetadata Resource's own operations.</p> <p>Each operation shall contain the following nested data:</p> <table><tr><td>Name</td><td>action</td></tr></table>		Name	action																
Name	action																				

Name	ResourceMetadata			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata			
Attribute	Type	Description		
		Data	Type	Description
		name	string	The name of the operation.
		uri	URI	A URI that uniquely identifies the operation at a global level.
		description	string	The human-readable description of the semantic of the operation. Constraints: consumerMandatory: false
		method	string	The protocol-dependent verb to use to perform the operation.
		inputMessage	string	The body mimeType of the request message; it may depend on the model format chosen by the Provider.
		outputMessage	string	The body mimeType of the response message; it may depend on the model format chosen by the Provider.
Every above attribute in the nested <code>action</code> table has the following constraints by default (unless overridden per attribute): providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: true consumerWritable: true The constraints for the <code>actions</code> attribute of <code>ResourceMetadata</code> are: Constraints: providerMandatory: false consumerMandatory: false mutable: true consumerWritable: true				

1880 When implementing or using `ResourceMetadata`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the
1881 syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in **Error! Reference source not found.** as well as in
1882 the tables describing embedded Resources or related Collections. Both Consumer and Provider shall
1883 serialize this Resource as described below. The following pseudo-schemas (see notation in 1.3) describe
1884 the serialization of the Resource in both JSON and XML:

1885 **JSON media type:** application/json

1886 **JSON serialization:**

```

1887 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata",
1888   "id": string,
1889   "typeURI": string,
1890   "name": string,
1891   "attributes" : [
1892     { "name": string,
1893       "namespace": string, ?
1894       "type": string, ?

```

```

1895     "required": boolean, ? } *
1896     ], ?
1897     "vscope" : [ valueScope, * ], ?
1898     "capabilities": [
1899         { "name": string, ?
1900           "uri": string,
1901           "description": string, ?
1902           "value": any } *
1903     ], ?
1904     "actions" : [
1905         { "name": string,
1906           "uri": string,
1907           "description": string, ?
1908           "method": string,
1909           "inputMessage": string, ?
1910           "outputMessage": string ? }, *
1911     ], ?
1912     "operations": [
1913         { "rel": "edit", "href": string }, ?
1914         { "rel": "delete", "href": string } ?
1915     ] ?
1916     ...
1917 }
```

XML media type: application/xml

XML serialization:

```

1920 <ResourceMetadata xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
1921   <id> xs:anyURI </id>
1922   <name> xs:string </name>
1923   <typeURI> xs:anyURI </typeURI>
1924   <attributes>
1925     <attribute name="xs:string" namespace="xs:anyURI"? type="xs:string"?
1926       required="xs:boolean"? /> *
1927   </attribute> *
1928 </attributes>
1929   <vscope> valueScope </vscope>?
1930   <capabilities>
1931     <capability name="xs:string"? uri="xs:anyURI" description="xs:string"?>
1932       xs:any*
1933     </capability> *
```

```

1934 </capabilities>
1935 <actions>
1936   <action name="xs:string" uri="xs:anyURI" description="xs:string"?
1937     method="xs:string" inputMessage="xs:string"?
1938     outputMessage="xs:string"? /> *
1939 </actions>
1940 <operations>
1941   <operation rel="edit" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1942   <operation rel="delete" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
1943 </operations>
1944 <xs:any>*
1945 </ResourceMetadata>

```

Additional metadata about the Resource or attributes may be included by the Provider.

5.11.1 Capabilities

Error! Reference source not found. describes the capability URIs defined by this specification. Providers may define new URIs and it is recommended that these URIs be dereferencable such that Consumers can discover the details of the new capability. The "Resource Name" column contains the name of the Resource that may contain the specified capability within its `ResourceMetadata`. The "Capability Name" column contains the name of the specified capability and shall be unique within the scope of the corresponding Resource. Each capability's URI shall be constructed by appending the "Resource Name", a slash (/), and the "Capability Name" to "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/". For example, the Machine's "InitialState" capability shall have a URI of:

```
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/InitialState
```

Capabilities that apply to the Provider in general, and are not specific to any one Resource, shall be associated with the `CloudEntryPoint` Resource (in case a capability applies only to the `CloudEntryPoint` Resource itself, its definition indicates this).

Each one of these capabilities may be set to some value, or may be absent. The meaning of an absent capability is defined as follows:

- For boolean-valued capabilities: same as a "false" value.
- For other capabilities that use a single value or a list of values among an enumeration: same as no particular preference or restriction being enforced for this value.

Table 7 – Capability URIs

Resource Name	Capability Name	Description
CloudEntryPoint	ExpandParameter	If true, the Provider shall support the <code>\$expand</code> query parameter.
CloudEntryPoint	FilterParameter	If true, the Provider shall support the <code>\$filter</code> query parameter.
CloudEntryPoint	FirstParameter	If true, the Provider shall support both the <code>\$first</code> and <code>\$last</code> query parameters.
CloudEntryPoint	SelectParameter	If true, the Provider shall support the <code>\$select</code> query parameter.
CloudEntryPoint	FormatParameter	If true, the Provider shall support the <code>\$format</code> query parameter.
CloudEntryPoint	OrderByParameter	If true, the Provider shall support the <code>\$orderby</code> query parameter.

Resource Name	Capability Name	Description
CloudEntryPoint	QueryPathNotation	If true, the Provider shall support the use of path-like notation with query parameter <code>\$select</code> (see 4.1.6.3) to disambiguate between attributes of a Collection Resource and attributes of each items in the Collection if subsetting.
CloudEntryPoint	MaxPropertyItems	If set, the Provider shall support a 'Properties' attribute with a number of elements less than or equal to the size specified by this capability.
CloudEntryPoint	ValueScopes	If true, the Provider shall support the use of attributes of type valueScope, for any Resource that may be created via a template.
System	SystemComponentTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support the specification of ComponentTemplates by value in SystemTemplates.
Machine	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a MachineTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new Machine to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.
Machine	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a MachineTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
Machine	MachineConfigByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying MachineConfigurations by value. If true, the MachineTemplateByValue shall also have the value true.
Machine	MachineCredentialByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying Credentials by value in Machine create operations. If true, the MachineTemplateByValue capability shall also have the value true.
Machine	MachineImageByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying MachineImages by value in Machine create operations. If true, the MachineTemplateByValue capability shall also have the value true.
Machine	MachineVolumeTemplatesByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying VolumeTemplates by value in Machine create operations. If, then the MachineTemplateByValue capability shall also have the value true.
Machine	MachineTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying MachineTemplates by value in Machine create operations.
Machine	MachineStopForce	If true, the Provider shall support the "force" option on the stop and restart operations on Machines.
Machine	MachineStopForceDefault	If true, the Provider shall forcefully stop Machines if no other indication is provided. Otherwise, the Provider shall gracefully stop Machines.
Machine	RestoreFromImage	If true, the Provider supports restoring Machines from MachineImages that are not SNAPSHOT MachineImages.
Machine	UserData	If set, indicates which userData injection method shall be used by the Provider.
Machine	MachineAvailabilityLevel	If true, the Provider supports the notion of an availability level for the Machine Resource. The availability level and its value constraints are advertised as an extension attribute by the way of the Machine and MachineTemplate ResourceMetadata.
Credential	CredentialTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying CredentialTemplates by value in Credential create operations.
Volume	SharedVolumeSupport	If true, the Provider shall support that a single Volume Resource can be shared by multiple Machines.

Resource Name	Capability Name	Description
Volume	VolumeConfigByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying VolumeConfigurations by value in the Volume create operation. If true, the VolumeTemplateByValue capability shall have the value true.
Volume	VolumeImageByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying VolumeImages by value in the Volume create operation. If true, the VolumeTemplateByValue capability shall have the value true.
Volume	VolumeSnapshot	If true, the Provider shall support creating a new VolumeImage by referencing an existing Volume.
Volume	VolumeTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying the VolumeTemplates by value in Volume create operations.
Volume	VolumeAvailabilityLevel	If true, the Provider supports the notion of an availability level for the Volume Resource. The availability level and its value constraints are advertised as an extension attribute by the way of the Volume and VolumeTemplate ResourceMetadata.
Network	NetworkTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying Network Templates by value in Network create operations.
Network	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a NetworkTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new Network to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.
Network	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a NetworkTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
NetworkInterface	NetworkInterfaceTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying NetworkInterface Templates by value in NetworkInterface create operations.
NetworkInterface	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a NetworkInterfaceTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new NetworkInterface to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.
NetworkInterface	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a NetworkInterfaceTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
NetworkService	NetworkServiceTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying NetworkService Templates by value in NetworkService create operations.
NetworkService	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a NetworkServiceTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new NetworkService to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.
NetworkService	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a NetworkServiceTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
ProtocolEndpoint	ProtocolEndpointTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying ProtocolEndpoint Templates by value in ProtocolEndpoint create operations.
ProtocolEndpoint	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a ProtocolEndpointTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new ProtocolEndpoint to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.

Resource Name	Capability Name	Description
ProtocolEndpoint	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a ProtocolEndpointTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
ProtocolSegment	ProtocolSegmentTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying ProtocolSegment Templates by value in ProtocolSegment create operations.
ProtocolSegment	DefaultInitialState	If this capability is set, unless otherwise provided (e.g., by a ProtocolSegmentTemplate "initialState" attribute), the Provider shall set a new ProtocolSegment to this state value, assuming the value is compatible with the InitialStates capability, if set.
ProtocolSegment	InitialStates	If this capability is set, and if using a ProtocolSegmentTemplate that has an "initialState" attribute, a Consumer shall use an initialState value from the set of values of this capability.
Job	JobRetention	If set, the value of this capability shall indicate the minimum number of minutes a job shall be retained by the Provider before it is deleted.
Meter	MeterConfigByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying MeterConfigurations by value in Meter create operations.
Meter	MeterTemplateByValue	If true, the Provider shall support specifying MeterTemplates by value in Meter create operations.
EventLog	Linked	If true, the Provider shall delete EventLogs that are associated with Resources if the Resource is deleted.

1966 The following examples show the ResourceMetadata for a Machine that advertises some of its
 1967 capabilities:

1968 **JSON serialization:**

```

1969 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata",
1970   "id": "http://example.com/types/Machine",
1971   "typeURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine",
1972   "name": "Machine",
1973   "capabilities": [
1974     { "uri":
1975       "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/MachineConfigByValue",
1976       "value": true },
1977     { "uri":
1978       "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/MachineImageByValue",
1979       "value": true },
1980     { "uri":
1981       "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/DefaultInitialState",
1982       "value": "STARTED" }
1983   ]
1984 }
```

1985 **XML serialization:**

```

1986 <ResourceMetadata xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
1987   <id> http://example.org/types/Machine </id>
```

```

1988 <typeURI> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine </typeURI>
1989 <name> Machine </name>
1990 <capabilities>
1991   <capability
1992 uri="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/MachineConfigByValue">
1993     true
1994   </capability>
1995   <capability
1996 uri="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/MachineImageByValue">
1997     true
1998   </capability>
1999   <capability
2000 uri="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/capability/Machine/DefaultInitialState">
2001     STARTED
2002   </capability>
2003 </capabilities>
2004 </ResourceMetadata>

```

5.11.2 ResourceMetadataCollection Resource

A ResourceMetadataCollection Resource represents the Collection of ResourceMetadata Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12. Note that modifications of the Resources within this Collection are typically reserved for administrator types of CIMI Consumers. This Resource shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```

2011 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadataCollection",
2012   "id": string,
2013   "count": number,
2014   "resourceMetadatas": [
2015     { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadata",
2016       "id": string,
2017       ... remaining ResourceMetadata attributes ...
2018     }, +
2019   ], ?
2020   "operations": [ { "rel": "add", "href": string } ? ]
2021   ...
2022 }

```

XML serialization:

```

2024 <Collection
2025   resourceURI="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ResourceMetadataCollection"
2026   xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2027   <id> xs:anyURI </id>
2028   <count> xs:integer </count>

```

```

2029 <resourceMetadatas>
2030   <ResourceMetadata>
2031     <id> xs:anyURI </id>
2032     ... remaining ResourceMetadata attributes ...
2033   </ResourceMetadata> *
2034 </resourceMetadatas>
2035 <operations>
2036   <operation rel="add" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2037 </operations>
2038 <xs:any>*
2039 </Collection>

```

5.12 Cloud Entry Point

The Cloud Entry Point (CloudEntryPoint Resource) represents the entry point into the cloud defined by the CIMI Model. It provides a Consumer with a single address (URI) from which the Consumer can discover and access all Resources usable by this Consumer. A Cloud Provider may provide different CEPs to different Consumers. The Cloud Entry Point (CEP) implements a catalog of Resources, such as Systems, SystemTemplates, Machines, MachineTemplates, etc., that can be queried and browsed by the Consumer.

If a Consumer issues a read on the CloudEntryPoint Resource, the Provider shall return a CloudEntryPoint Resource that only catalogs Resources on which this Consumer is allowed to perform operations. **Error! Reference source not found.** describes the attributes for the CloudEntryPoint Resource.

If the delete operation is advertised on the CEP, deleting the CloudEntryPoint Resource is also deleting all referred Resources.

Table 8 – CloudEntryPoint attributes

Name	CloudEntryPoint	
Type URI	http://www.dmf.org/cimi/2/CloudEntryPoint	
Attribute	Type	Description
baseURI	URI	An absolute URI that references the "base URI" of the Provider. This URI shall be used to convert relative URIs to Resources within this Provider to absolute URIs. See the "URIs" clause of 5.5. Constraints: providerMandatory: true consumerMandatory: true mutable: false consumerWritable: false
resourceMetadata	collection [Resource Metadata]	A reference to ResourceMetadata Collection of this Cloud Entry Point. The Collection contains a description of the Resources supported by the Provider. If a Resource does not have any metadata, it shall not appear in this list, e.g., it has no constraints beyond what the CIMI specification defines nor does it have any extension attributes.
systems	collection [System]	A reference to the SystemCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
systemTemplates	collection [System Template]	A reference to the SystemTemplateCollection of this CloudEntry Point.

Name	CloudEntryPoint	
Type URI	http://www.dmf.org/cimi/2/CloudEntryPoint	
Attribute	Type	Description
machines	collection [Machine]	A reference to the MachineCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
machineTemplates	collection [Machine Template]	A reference to the MachineTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
machineConfigs	collection [Machine Configuration]	A reference to the MachineConfigurationCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
machineImages	collection [Machine Image]	A reference to the MachineImageCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
credentials	collection [Credential]	A reference to the CredentialCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
credentialTemplates	collection [Credential Template]	A reference to the CredentialTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
volumes	collection [Volume]	A reference to the VolumeCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
volumeTemplates	collection [Volume Template]	A reference to the VolumeTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
volumeConfigs	collection [Volume Configuration]	A reference to the VolumeConfigurationCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
volumeImages	collection [Volume Image]	A reference to the VolumeImageCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
networks	collection [Network]	A reference to the NetworkCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
networkTemplates	collection [Network Template]	A reference to the NetworkTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
segments	collection [Protocol Segment]	A reference to the ProtocolSegmentCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
segmentTemplates	collection [Protocol Segment Template]	A reference to the ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
endpoints	collection [Protocol Endpoint]	A reference to the ProtocolEndpointCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
endpointTemplates	collection [Protocol Endpoint Templates]	A reference to the ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
interfaces	collection [Network Interface]	A reference to the NetworkInterfaceCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
interfaceTemplates	collection [Network Interface Templates]	A reference to the NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.
networkServices	collection [Network]	A reference to the NetworkServiceCollection of this Cloud Entry Point.

Name	CloudEntryPoint	
Type URI	http://www.dmf.org/cimi/2/CloudEntryPoint	
Attribute	Type	Description
	<i>Service</i>	
networkServiceTemplates	<i>collection</i> <i>[Network Service Template]</i>	A reference to the <i>NetworkServiceTemplateCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
jobs	<i>collection</i> <i>[Job]</i>	A reference to the <i>JobsCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
meters	<i>collection</i> <i>[Meter]</i>	A reference to the <i>MeterCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
meterTemplates	<i>collection</i> <i>[Meter Template]</i>	A reference to the <i>MeterTemplateCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
meterConfigs	<i>collection</i> <i>[Meter Configuration]</i>	A reference to the <i>MeterConfigurationCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
eventLogs	<i>collection</i> <i>[EventLog]</i>	A reference to the <i>EventLogCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.
eventLogTemplates	<i>collection</i> <i>[EventLog Template]</i>	A reference to the <i>EventLogTemplateCollection</i> of this Cloud Entry Point.

Every above attribute of the *CloudEntryPoint* Resource has the following constraints by default (unless overridden per attribute):

providerMandatory: false
consumerMandatory: false
mutable: true
consumerWritable: true

Each of the Collections mentioned in **Error! Reference source not found.** are defined within the related Resource definition clauses. For example, the *MachineCollection* Resource is defined in clause 5.14.2 as part of the Machine-related Resources. When implementing or using *CloudEntryPoint*, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in **Error! Reference source not found.** as well as in the tables describing embedded Resources or related Collections. Both Consumer and Provider shall serialize this Resource as described below. The following pseudo-schemas (see notation in 1.3) describe the serialization of the Resource in both JSON and XML:

JSON media type: application/json

JSON serialization:

```
{ "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/CloudEntryPoint",
  "id": string,
  "name": string, ?
  "description": string, ?
  "created": string, ?
  "updated": string, ?
  "properties": { string: string, + }, ?
  "baseURI": string,
  "resourceMetadata": { "href": string }, ?
  "systems": { "href": string }, ?
```

```

2081     "systemTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2082     "machines": { "href": string }, ?
2083     "machineTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2084     "machineConfigs": { "href": string }, ?
2085     "machineImages": { "href": string }, ?
2086     "credentials": { "href": string }, ?
2087     "credentialTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2088     "volumes": { "href": string }, ?
2089     "volumeTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2090     "volumeConfigs": { "href": string }, ?
2091     "volumeImages": { "href": string }, ?
2092     "networks": { "href": string }, ?
2093     "networkTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2094     "segments": { "href": string }, ?
2095     "segmentTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2096     "endpoints": { "href": string }, ?
2097     "endpointTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2098     "interfaces": { "href": string }, ?
2099     "interfaceTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2100     "networkServices": { "href": string }, ?
2101     "networkServiceTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2102     "jobs": { "href": string }, ?
2103     "meters": { "href": string }, ?
2104     "meterTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2105     "meterConfigs": { "href": string }, ?
2106     "eventLogs": { "href": string }, ?
2107     "eventLogTemplates": { "href": string }, ?
2108     "operations": [
2109         { "rel": "edit", "href": string } ?
2110     ] ?
2111     ...
2112 }

```

2113 **XML media type:** application/xml

2114 **XML serialization:**

```

2115 <CloudEntryPoint xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2116     <id> xs:anyURI </id>
2117     <name> xs:string </name> ?
2118     <description> xs:string </description> ?
2119     <created> xs:dateTime </created> ?

```

```

2120 <updated> xs:dateTime </updated> ?
2121 <properties>
2122   <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2123 </properties>
2124 <baseURI> xs:anyURI </baseURI>
2125 <resourceMetadata href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2126 <systems href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2127 <systemTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2128 <machines href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2129 <machineTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2130 <machineConfigs href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2131 <machineImages href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2132 <credentials href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2133 <credentialTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2134 <volumes href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2135 <volumeTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2136 <volumeConfigs href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2137 <volumeImages href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2138 <networks href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2139 <networkTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2140 <segments href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2141 <segmentTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2142 <endpoints href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2143 <endpointTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2144 <interfaces href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2145 <interfaceTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2146 <networkServices href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2147 <networkServiceTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2148 <jobs href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2149 <meters href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2150 <meterTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2151 <meterConfigs href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2152 <eventLogs href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2153 <eventLogTemplates href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
2154 <operations>
2155   <operation rel="edit" href="xs:anyURI"/> *
2156 </operations>
2157 <xs:any>*
2158 </CloudEntryPoint>

```

2159 5.12.1 Operations

2160 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations.

2161 5.13 System Resources and relationships

2162 5.13.1 System

2163 A `System` is a realized Resource that consists of one or more `Networks`, `Volumes`, `Machines`,
2164 (and others) that could be connected and associated with each other. A `System` can be created from the
2165 interpretation of a `SystemTemplate`. A `System` can be operated and managed as a single Resource
2166 and usually forms a stack of service. For example, a shopping cart system consists of machines for Web
2167 servers and databases, network addresses for public access, and volumes for database files. A `System`
2168 has several "top-level" attributes that are Collections of references to Resources of various types. Each
2169 one of these Collections shall contain references to Resource items of the related type that are
2170 components of the System. Each one of these System components may be either:

- 2171 • a *child component* of the the System (see 5.10.2).
- 2172 • an *associated component* of the System..

2173 By default, all Resources that are created as the result of a System creation are also children
2174 components of the `System`. Some components of a System may pre-exist to the System – e.g. they
2175 would be referred to by the `SystemTemplate` used to create that System. Such component Resources are
2176 associated components of the System

2177 An example of associated component in a System, is of a `Network` created independently from the
2178 System, directly by POSTing to the `networks` CEP collection. A Consumer may then want the System to
2179 reuse that Network as a component while keeping the Network managed separately from the System, in
2180 particular not to be deleted when the System is deleted. Such a Network may still be inserted in the
2181 `networks` System collection as an associated component, while having its `parent` attribute referring to
2182 the CEP as originally set. Alternatively, the Network could be made a child component of the System by
2183 setting its `parent` attribute to the System's `networks` collection Resource.

2184 Note:

- 2185 - A Resource component of a `System` may in turn use some other Resources that are not
2186 component of this `System`, e.g., a `Machine` in a `System` can use a `Volume` that is neither
2187 component of the Machine, nor a component of the System.

2188 **Error! Reference source not found.** describes the System attributes.

2189 **Table 9 – System attributes**

Name	System	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/System	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	string	<p>The operational state of the System. Allowed values are: (See 5.14.1.) CREATING: The System is in the process of being created. STARTING/STARTED/STOPPING/STOPPED/PAUSING/PAUSED/SUSPENDING/SUSPENDED: The <code>System</code> shall be in one of these states if all the <code>Machines</code> referenced by the <code>System</code> are in that state. See clause 5.14.1 for the list of available actions based on the state of a <code>Machine</code>. Such transitional states may just indicate that all <code>Machines</code> in a <code>System</code> are undergoing the same operation (e.g., "start"), without the <code>System</code> being actually operated on (e.g., no "start" done at <code>System</code> level). An actual operation on a <code>System</code> may be traced by querying the "job" entity. MIXED: The <code>System</code> shall be in this state if either no <code>Machines</code> are referenced</p>

Name	System	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/System	
Attribute	Type	Description
		<p>by this <code>System</code> or <code>Machines</code> referenced by this <code>System</code> are in varying states. Such varying states are likely to occur when an operation is in progress on a <code>System</code>, resulting in transitions of its <code>Machine</code> states toward a new common state (e.g., <code>STOPPED</code>, <code>STARTED</code>) but at a different pace, or sequentially one after the other.</p> <p>DELETING: The <code>System</code> is in the process of being deleted.</p> <p>ERROR: The Provider has detected an error in the <code>System</code>. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.13.1.2.</p>
systems	<i>collection</i> [<i>System</i>]	A list of references to nested <code>Systems</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
machines	<i>collection</i> [<i>Machine</i>]	A list of references to <code>Machines</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
credentials	<i>collection</i> [<i>Credential</i>]	A list of references to <code>Credentials</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
volumes	<i>collection</i> [<i>Volume</i>]	A list of references <code>Volumes</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
networks	<i>collection</i> [<i>Network</i>]	A list of references to <code>Network</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
networkServices	<i>collection</i> [<i>Network Service</i>]	A reference to the <code>NetworkServiceCollection</code> that are components of this <code>System</code> .
services	<i>Collection</i> [<i>SystemService</i>]	A list of references to <code>SystemService</code> Resources that represent services supported by this <code>System</code> .
meters	<i>collection</i> [<i>Meter</i>]	A list of references to <code>Meters</code> monitored for this <code>System</code> , with component semantics. Note that these <code>Meters</code> are for the <code>System</code> and not for any individual component in the <code>System</code> .
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this <code>System</code> . Note that this <code>EventLog</code> is for the <code>System</code> and not for any individual component in the <code>System</code> .

2190 When implementing or using `System`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and
 2191 semantics of its attributes as described in **Error! Reference source not found.** as well as in the tables
 2192 describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

2193 5.13.1.1 Attributes of type Collection

2194 The following clause describes the Collection Resources components of `Systems`.

2195 5.13.1.1.1 systems Collection

2196 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "`System`". There is no accessory attribute for the
 2197 items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic `System` Collection, the serialization of which follows the
 2198 rules in 5.5.12. See the `SystemCollection` Resource clause.

2199 **5.13.1.1.2 machines Collection**

2200 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Machine". There is no accessory attribute for the
 2201 items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic Machine Collection (serialized as described in 5.5.12). See
 2202 the MachineCollection Resource clause.

2203 **5.13.1.1.3 credentials Collection**

2204 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Credential". There is no accessory attribute for
 2205 the items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic Credential Collection (serialized as described in
 2206 5.5.12). See the CredentialCollection Resource clause.

2207 **5.13.1.1.4 volumes Collection**

2208 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Volume". There is no accessory attribute for the
 2209 items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic Volume Collection (serialized as described in 5.5.12). See
 2210 the VolumeCollection Resource clause.

2211 **5.13.1.1.5 networks Collection**

2212 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Network". There is no accessory attribute for the
 2213 items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic NetworkCollection Resource as described in
 2214 clause.5.16.2

2215 **5.13.1.1.6 networkServices Collection**

2216 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "NetworkService". There is no accessory
 2217 attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore, it is a basic NetworkServiceCollection as
 2218 described in clause 5.16.18.

2219 **5.13.1.1.7 meters Collection**

2220 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Meter" as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 2221 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic Meter Collection (serialized as
 2222 described in 5.5.12). See the MeterCollection Resource clause.

2223 **5.13.1.2 Operations**

2224 The System Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through
 2225 the SystemCollection Resource.

2226 The following custom operations are also defined:

2227 **start/stop/restart/pause/suspend**

2228 **/link@rel:** <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/xxx>

2229 Where "xxx" is either "start", "stop", "restart", "pause", or "suspend".

2230 This operation shall recursively perform the requested operation on each component of the System
 2231 (Machine or sub-System). Note that not all Machines need to be in the same state for this operation
 2232 to be available and the impact of this operation varies depending on the component's current state; see
 2233 clause 5.14.1.2 for more details about performing operations on Machines. If the operation fails for a
 2234 Machine, that Machine shall not be affected by the operation.

2235 **export**

2236 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export`

2237 This operation shall export a `System` along with all `Resources` component of or used by this `System`. If
 2238 an export package exists at that URI, it is updated with the values of the `System` and any component
 2239 management `Resources`. Otherwise, a new export package is created at that URI with a Media Type as
 2240 specified by the "format" parameter. Other formats may be used if supported, but are not specified by this
 2241 standard.

2242 Input parameters:

- 2243 1) "format" - type: string - optional
- 2244 2) Indicates the Media Type of the exported data. If not present, the default value shall be
 2245 "application/ovf."
- 2246 3)
- 2247 4) "destination" - type: URI - optional
- 2248 5) Indicates the location to where the exported data is placed. If not present, the HTTP response
 2249 Location header shall contain the URL to the exported data. Based on the specific protocol
 2250 specified within the URI, the Consumer might need to provide additional information (such as
 2251 credentials) in the "properties" field. In the case of HTTP, a PUT shall be used to place the data
 2252 at the specified location.

2253 Output parameters: None.

2254 **HTTP protocol**

2255 To export a `System`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export" URI of the
 2256 `System` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2257 **JSON media type:** application/json

2258 **JSON serialization:**

```
2259 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2260   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export",
2261   "format": string, ?
2262   "destination": string, ?
2263   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2264   ...
2265 }
```

2266 **XML media type:** application/xml

2267 **XML serialization**

```
2268 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2269   <action>http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export</action>
2270   <format> xs:string </format> ?
2271   <destination> xs:anyURI </destination> ?
2272   <properties>
2273     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2274   </properties>
2275   <xs:any>*
```

2276 `</Action>`

2277 **5.13.2 SystemCollection Resource**

2278 A `SystemCollection` Resource represents a Collection of `System` Resources and follows the
2279 Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12. Operations

2280 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a `SystemTemplate` be used (see 4.2.1.1).

2281 Resources created during the process of creating a `System` shall be components of the `System` (see
2282 5.13.1). For example, a `componentDescriptor` that references a `MachineTemplate`, and within
2283 that `MachineTemplate` is a reference to a `VolumeTemplate`, results in a reference to the new
2284 `Machine` being added to the `System.machines` attribute and a reference to the new `Volume` being
2285 added to the `System.volumes` attribute. However, if this `MachineTemplate` refers to an existing
2286 `Volume`, this `Volume` shall not be added to the top-level `System` attributes.

2287 The following custom operations are also defined:

2288 **import**

2289 `/link@rel:http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import`

2290 This operation shall import a `System`. Not only is a `System` created, but `Machines`, `Volumes`, and
2291 `Networks` and possibly recursive `Systems` and their components may also be created corresponding
2292 to imported descriptor entries. More detail about this process is in ANNEX A.

- 2293 1) Input parameters:"source" - type: URI - mandatory
- 2294 2) Indicates the location from which the imported data is retrieved. Based on the specific protocol
2295 specified within the URI, the Consumer might need to provide additional information (such as
2296 credentials) in the "properties" field.

2297 Output parameters: None.

2298 **HTTP protocol**

2299 To import a `System`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import" URI of the
2300 `SystemCollection` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2301 **JSON media type:** application/json

2302 **JSON serialization:**

```
2303 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2304   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import",
2305   "source": string, ?
2306   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2307   ...
2308 }
```

2309 **XML media type:** application/xml

2310 **XML serialization**

```
2311 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2312   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import </action>
2313   <source> xs:anyURI </source> ?
2314   <properties>
```

```

2315     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2316   </properties>
2317   <xs:any>*
2318 </Action>

```

2319 5.13.3 SystemService Resource

2320 A SystemService Resource represents some management service for all or a subset of the Resources in
 2321 a System. A SystemService Resource can define diverse types of management services and holds:

- 2322 (a) Topology information about the service: a list of the Resources concerned by this management
- 2323 service, e.g. lists of Machines and Volumes subject to disaster recovery policy.
- 2324 (b) Service-specific parameters: configuration data for the service itself.

2325 System components may be listed under more than one SystemService Resources. For example, a
 2326 Machine may be under a recovery service, while also participating into an autoscaling service.

2327 Some examples of common services are:

- 2328 • HighReliability service
- 2329 • DisasterRecovery service
- 2330 • Backup service
- 2331 • Autoscaling service

2332 **Table 10 - SystemService attributes**

Name		
SystemService		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService		
Attribute	Type	Description
serviceType	URI	Unique URI identifying this particular service. It shall be of the form: <a href="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/<servicename>">http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/<servicename> where <servicename> is the end of the path, possibly a subpath.
machines	Collection[Machine]	A reference to the list of references to Machines that are managed under this SystemService. The Resource item type may be a variant of Machine in case accessory attributes are added to the collection. This Resource items in this Collection are not child components of the SystemService Resource: deleting the SystemService shall not cause the deletion of the referred Machines.
volumes	Collection[Volume]	A reference to the list of references to Volumes that are managed under this SystemService. The Resource item type may be a variant of Volume in case accessory attributes are added to the collection. This Resource items in this Collection are not child components of the SystemService Resource: deleting the SystemService shall not cause the deletion of the referred Volumes.
systems	collection[System]	A reference to the list of references to Systems or sub-Systems that are managed under this SystemService. The Resource item type may be a variant of System in case accessory attributes are added to the collection. This Resource items in this Collection are not child components of the SystemService Resource: deleting the SystemService shall not cause the deletion of the referred Systems.
parameters	map	A list of attributes that are specific to this SystemService, i.e. associated with a particular ServiceType value.

2333

2334

2335 **5.13.3.1 HighReliability service Resource**

2336 This service allows for a System to recover from the failures of its Machines; the service intervenes when
 2337 the Machine stops working - typically the System does not receive the Machine heartbeat anymore. This
 2338 service protects from hardware and software failures, i.e. the failure of the hardware node executing the
 2339 machine, or the case of a software process causing a segment violation that stops the OS services.

2340 **Table 11 – SystemService attributes for HighReliability service**

Name	SystemService			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService			
Attribute	Type	Description		
serviceType	URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/highreliability/active or http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/highreliability/passive		
machines	Collection[Recoverable Machine]	<p>A reference to the collection of Machines in the System that are managed under this SystemService, meaning these benefit from recovery service. Adding a Machine reference to this collection means that the Machine becomes managed under this SystemService.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the serviceType is ending with “/highreliability/active”: Then each one of the listed Machines has a backup Machine . In case of failure the backup Machine (referred to by the recoverableMachine collection item) shall take over. . • If the serviceType is ending with “/highreliability/passive”: Then each one of the listed Machines has an up-to-date MachineImage . In case of failure the backup Machine is created from the MachineImage and shall replace the failed Machine. , <p>This Resource items in this Collection are not components of the SystemService Resource: deleting the SystemService does not cause the deletion of the referred Machines.</p> <p>The details of the SystemService behavior (e.g. failover detection, etc.) depends on the Provider's implementation, and can be controlled by additional parameters in the next attribute.</p>		
parameters	map	name	type	value
		networkServices	collection [Network Service]	A reference to the NetworkServiceCollection within the System that support this SystemService.
		heartbeat	Integer	Heartbeat frequency, in term of millisecs between an heartbeat and the next.
		replicationType	String	The kind of Machine replication status (it does not refer to the Volume Resource) allowable values are: synchronous, asynchronous, none , (same Machine, but not status alignment in order to allow the recovery in case just the status could cause failure) onlyAtClusterCreation

Name	SystemService			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService			
Attribute	Type	Description		
		RPO	Integer	Recovery Point Objective (duration in minutes) in case of asynchronous replica of the disks.

2341 5.13.3.1.1 RecoverableMachine Collection

2342 The referred Resource type for each item of this Collection is “Machine”. However because there are
 2343 accessory attributes, this is not a basic but an enhanced Machine Collection. The accessory attribute is
 2344 defined in Table 18:

2345 **Table 12 – RecoverableMachine accessory attributes**

Name	RecoverableMachine		
Type URI			
Attribute	Type	Description	
backupmachine	Ref	An additional reference to the backup Machine in the same System, that supports the Machine referenced by this collection item.	

2346 5.13.3.1.2 Operations

2347 The `HighReliability` SystemService Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
 2348 Create is supported through the SystemService Collection Resource.

2349 Adding a machine to the collection (see the `addRM` operation) implies that a backup Machine shall be
 2350 created and the `backupmachine` attribute shall be assigned to this copy (even if it is not an running
 2351 Machine, but only a “passive” copy ready to be executed in case of failure). The way the backup copy is
 2352 created depends on the Provider implementation, it is expected that an image of the recoverable machine
 2353 is taken and from this image a new machine is created.

2354 If the Consumer also gives the `backupmachine` reference as input parameter, it is assumed that the
 2355 backup machine is that referenced machine and no new backup machines shall be created.

2356 A backup machine may also be added as part of the list of recovertable machines (i.e. in the “machines”
 2357 collection of the System service). This amounts to defining a daisy-chain of two (or more) backup
 2358 machines for the original (primary) recoverable machine subject to the system service.

2359 The following custom operations are also defined on this SystemService Resource:

2360 **forceSync**

2361 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/forceSync`

2362 This operation shall synchronize the state of a node onto its backup node, regardless of the scheduled
 2363 synchronization time as dictated by the recovery policies.

2364 The result of this operation depends on the Provider implementation and on the status of the backup
 2365 Machine; typically it has effect when the backup Machine is obtained by an image copy of the recoverable
 2366 Machine.

2367 Input parameters: “node” (primary node) type: ref - mandatory

2368 Output parameters: None.

2369 **swapBackup**

2370 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/swapBackup`

2371 This operation shall swap a Machine and its backup Machine – i.e. replace the Machine with its backup
2372 and vice-versa.

2373 Some Providers can choose to not make available this operation, not allowing the Consumer to choose
2374 which backup node turn in primary one.

2375 Input parameters:"node" - type: ref - mandatory
2376 A reference to the Machine to be replaced by its backup

2377 Output parameters: None.

2378 **addRM**

2379 **/link@rel:** <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/addRM>

2380 This operation adds a recoverable Machine (or RM) to the collection of recoverable Machines under this
2381 service. It adds the reference of the Machine to the `machines` collection of recoverable Machines, and
2382 optionally a reference to the backup Machine (accessory attribute "backupmachine").

2383 Input parameters:"node" (Machine to be added to the service) - type: ref – mandatory, "backup" (Machine
2384 to be used as backup) - type: ref – optional ,
2385 Output parameters: None.

2386 **removeRM**

2387 **/link@rel:** <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/removeRM>

2388 This operation removes a recoverable Machine (or RM) from the collection of recoverable Machines
2389 under this service. It removes the reference of the Machine from the `machines` collection of recoverable
2390 Machines, and discards the backup Machine.

2391 Input parameters:"node" (Machine to be removed from the service) - type: ref – mandatory,
2392 Output parameters: None.

2393 **5.13.3.2 DisasterRecovery service Resource**

2394 This service allows for a System to recover from a data center failure – by maintaining a remote, up-to-
2395 date image of the System.

2396 Unlike the `HighReliability` service, which enables to define advanced recovery techniques for
2397 different error typologies, the `DisasterRecovery` service intervenes in the specific case of a data
2398 center failure and only implements the mechanism to re-start crashed resources on a remote data
2399 center.

2400 On a data center failure occurrence, where other advanced approaches fail, this service guarantees
2401 resources' restoration, although some service-downtime will occur, i.e. there should be no expectation
2402 from the customers that transition from one data center to another is "transparent".

2403 Typically the `DisasterRecovery` can be offered by default for every Machine, though some Providers
2404 could activate it as an additional feature to be explicitly requested by the Consumer, or more often could
2405 allow the consumer to chose the location of the remote datacenter; in such cases it is possible to define a
2406 `DisasterRecovery` service Resource.

2407 The attribues for the DisasterRecovery system service Resource are:

2408 **Table 13 – SystemService attributes for DisasterRecovery service**

Name	SystemService			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService			
Attribute	Type	Description		
<i>serviceType</i>	<i>URI</i>	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/disasterrecovery/		
<i>machines</i>	<i>Collection[Machine]</i>	<p>A reference to the collection of <i>Machines</i> in the <i>System</i> that are managed under this <i>SystemService</i>, meaning these benefit from recovery service. Adding a <i>Machine</i> reference to this collection means that the <i>Machine</i> becomes managed under this <i>SystemService</i>.</p> <p>This Resource items in this <i>Collection</i> are not components of the <i>SystemService</i> Resource: deleting the <i>SystemService</i> does not cause the deletion of the referred <i>Machines</i>.</p> <p>The details of the <i>SystemService</i> behavior (e.g. failover detection, etc.) depends on the Provider's implementation.</p>		
<i>parameters</i>	<i>map</i>	name	type	value
		backupData Center	<i>URI</i>	Identity of the backup data center or Cloud to be used as a backup.
		backupCEP	<i>ref</i>	Reference to the CEP in the backup DC under which the recovery resources are to be provisioned.
		networkServices	<i>collection [Network Service]</i>	A reference to the <i>NetworkServiceCollection</i> within the <i>System</i> that support this <i>SystemService</i> .

2409 5.13.3.2.1 Operations

2410 The *DisasterRecovery* *SystemService* Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
 2411 Create is supported through the *SystemService* Collection Resource.

2412 addRM

2413 **/link@rel:** <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/addRM>

2414 This operation adds a recoverable Machine (or RM) to the collection of recoverable Machines under this
 2415 service. It adds the reference of the Machine to the *machines* collection of recoverable Machines.

2416 Input parameters:"node" (Machine to be added to the service) - type: ref – mandatory,
 2417 Output parameters: None.

2418 removeRM

2419 **/link@rel:** <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/removeRM>

2420 This operation removes a recoverable Machine (or RM) from the collection of recoverable Machines
 2421 under this service. It removes the reference of the Machine from the *machines* collection of recoverable
 2422 Machines..

2423 Input parameters:"node" (Machine to be removed from the service) - type: ref – mandatory,
 2424 Output parameters: None.

2425 5.13.4 SystemTemplate Resource

2426 The *SystemTemplate* Resource contains the set of individual descriptors that are necessary to create
 2427 or associate the components of a *System*. In practice, the Provider interprets the set of component
 2428 descriptors as a set of creation (or association) operations to be executed in an order compatible with the

2429 dependencies (e.g., attachments or references between components) that are expressed between these
 2430 components.

2431 A `SystemTemplate` may include symbolic component references in the descriptors, used to express
 2432 links between components of the resulting System. A component reference uses the "name" of the target
 2433 (referred) component. For example, `<volume href="#newVolume"/>` would reference a `Volume`
 2434 named "newVolume." The reference name – #newVolume – is replaced by the actual Resource URL in
 2435 the instantiated System.

2436 Table 19 describes the `SystemTemplate` attributes.

2437 **Table 14 – SystemTemplate attributes**

Name	SystemTemplate			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemTemplate			
Attribute	Type	Description		
component Descriptors	componentDescriptor[]	The list of component descriptors describing the components of a System instance realized from this SystemTemplate. For each component descriptor, the corresponding component is either created when a System instance is created (i.e. a child component), or simply associated with the system if it already exists.		
		<ul style="list-style-type: none">In case of a child component: The component descriptor refers to a Template (either by reference or by value), and may also provide additional metadata (name, description, properties). The creation order of components is not specified in SystemTemplate; in particular the order of the component descriptors in this array is not meaningful in terms of creation order.In case of an existing Resource to be added as an associated component of the System: The component descriptor refers directly to the existing Resource.		
		Name	componentDescriptor	
		Data	Type Description	
		name	string	The value of the "name" attribute that is associated with a System component created from this component descriptor. Note: This name is not to be confused with the name that may be present in the component Template – e.g., a MachineTemplate – from which this component is instantiated.
		description	string	The value of the "description" attribute that is associated with a System component created from this component descriptor.
		properties	map	The key/value pairs that is associated with a System component created from this component descriptor.
type	URI	The TypeURI of the component to be created from this component descriptor, e.g., for a Machine: http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine		

Name	SystemTemplate			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemTemplate			
Attribute	Type	Description		
		<component Resource>	<any>	<p>The exact name of this attribute varies depending on the type of Resource being created or added, This attribute shall contain either:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">A Template that is provided inline. Such an embedded Template may contain component references, each one of which shall resolve to the URI of a component with same name once created from this SystemTemplate. In such a case, the attribute name is same as the Template type name, with first letter lower case. (e.g. machineTemplate).A reference to an externally defined Template. Some attribute name/value pairs may be added inside the componentTemplate element to override similar attributes in the referred Template (as described in 4.2.1.1). This example shows how component references can be added to an external Template. The attribute name is same as the Template type name, with first letter lower case. (e.g. machineTemplate). <p>Example (JSON):</p> <pre>"machineTemplate": { "href": "http://example.com/machineTemplates/72000", "credential": { "href": "#MyCredential" } }</pre> <p>Note: The “credential” attribute in this example assumes that there is another componentDescriptor item named “MyCredential” of type “Credential” in the SystemTemplate. It shall set or override similar attribute in the referred MachineTemplate if instantiating the Machine component.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">A reference to an existing Resource to become associated component of the System. The attribute name is same as the Resource type name, with first letter lower case (e.g. “machine”).
		quantity	integer	<p>The number of component instances to be created from this component descriptor, if a template. By default, this number is equal to 1. If the value is 2 or more, the actual name assigned to each instance is the "name" value concatenated with a sequential number (e.g., if name="mymachine", and quantity=3, the names are: mymachine1, mymachine2, mymachine3.)</p>
serviceDescriptors	serviceDescriptor[]	The list of service descriptors for the services to be supported by a System instance realized from this SystemTemplate. For each service descriptor, the corresponding SystemService is created when a System instance is created. The names of the System components subject to the service are listed using the symbolic component reference notation previously described (“#<name>”).		
		Name	serviceDescriptor	
		Data	Type	Description
		name	string	The value of the "name" attribute that is associated with a SystemService instance created from this service descriptor.

Name	SystemTemplate			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemTemplate			
Attribute	Type	Description		
		description	string	The value of the "description" attribute that is associated with a <code>SystemService</code> instance created from this service descriptor.
		properties	map	The key/value pairs that is associated with a <code>SystemService</code> instance created from this service descriptor.
		serviceType	URI	The serviceType of the service to be created from this service descriptor, e.g., for a <code>SystemService</code> of type "DisasterRecovery": http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/disasterrecovery
		parameters	map	This is where additional service-specific attributes are listed (see section 5.13.6).
meter Templates	<i>Meter Templates[]</i>	A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <code>Meters</code> to the new <code>System</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.		
eventLog Template	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>System</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.		
import Image	<i>URI</i>	If the Template is the result of an import – e.g., of an OVF package - this attribute should be used. If present, it shall reference the import source (e.g., OVF package) used to create this Template.		
genResourceMetadata	<i>ref</i>	A reference to a <code>ResourceMetadata</code> that shall be associated with every <code>System</code> generated from this Template.		

2438 When implementing or using `SystemTemplate`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax
 2439 and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 19 as well as in the tables describing embedded
 2440 Resources or related Collections.

2441 5.13.4.1 Operations

2442 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 2443 `SystemTemplateCollection` Resource.

2444 The following custom operations are also defined:

2445 **export**

2446 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export

2447 This operation shall export a `SystemTemplate` along with all its component Resources as well as the
 2448 used Resources that are listed in its top-level Collections. If an export package exists at that URI, it is
 2449 updated with the values of the `SystemTemplate` and any component management Resources.

2450 Otherwise a new export package is created at that URI with a Media Type as specified by the "format"
2451 parameter. Other formats may be used if supported, but are not specified by this standard.

2452 Input parameters:

- 2453 1) "format" - type: string - optional
- 2454 2) Indicates the Media Type of the exported data. If not present, the default value shall be
2455 "application/ovf."
- 2456 3) "destination" - type: URI - optional
- 2457 4) Indicates the location to where the exported data is placed. If not present, the HTTP response
2458 Location header shall contain the URL to the exported data. Based on the specific protocol
2459 specified within the URI, the Consumer might need to provide additional information (such as
2460 credentials) in the "properties" field. In the case of HTTP, a PUT shall be used to place the data
2461 at the specified location.

2462 Output parameters: None.

2463 HTTP protocol

2464 To export a `SystemTemplate`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export"
2465 URI of the `SystemTemplate` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2466 **JSON media type:** application/json

2467 **JSON serialization:**

```
2468 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",  
2469   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export",  
2470   "format": string, ?  
2471   "destination": string, ?  
2472   "properties": { string: string, + } ?  
2473   ...  
2474 }
```

2475 **XML media type:** application/xml

2476 **XML serialization**

```
2477 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">  
2478   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/export </action>  
2479   <format> xs:string </format> ?  
2480   <destination> xs:anyURI </destination> ?  
2481   <properties>  
2482     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *  
2483   </properties> ?  
2484   <xs:any>*</xs:any>  
2485 </Action>
```

2486 5.13.5 SystemTemplateCollection Resource

2487 A `SystemTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `SystemTemplate`
2488 Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

2489 5.13.5.1 Operations

2490 The following custom operations are defined:

2491 **import**

2492 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import`

2493 This operation shall import a `SystemTemplate`. Not only is a `SystemTemplate` created, but
 2494 `MachineTemplates`, `VolumeTemplates`, and `NetworkTemplates` and possibly recursive
 2495 `SystemTemplates` and their components may also be created, corresponding to imported descriptor
 2496 entries. More detail about this process is in ANNEX A.

2497 Input parameters:

- 2498 1) "source" - type: URI - mandatory
- 2499 2) Indicates the location from which the imported data is retrieved. Based on the specific protocol
- 2500 specified within the URI, the Consumer might need to provide additional information (such as
- 2501 credentials) in the "properties" field.

2502 Output parameters: None.

2503 **HTTP protocol**

2504 To import a `SystemTemplate`, a POST is sent to the "`http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import`"
 2505 URI of the `SystemTemplateCollection` where the HTTP request body shall be as described
 2506 below.

2507 **JSON media type:** `application/json`

2508 **JSON serialization:**

```
2509 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2510   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import",
2511   "source": string, ?
2512   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2513   ...
2514 }
```

2515 **XML media type:** `application/xml`

2516 **XML serialization**

```
2517 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2518   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/import </action>
2519   <source> xs:anyURI </source> ?
2520   <properties>
2521     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2522   </properties> ?
2523   <xs:any>*
2524 </Action>
```

2525

2526 **5.13.6 Service-specific Descriptor attributes**

2527 This section defines the additional attributes specific to each service type that need be added to a
 2528 serviceDescriptor for this service type in the SystemTemplate.

2529 **5.13.6.1 Parameters for the HighReliability service type**

2530 Service type: <http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/SystemService/highreliability>

2531 **Table 15 – Additional parameters for HighReliability service**

Service type	highreliability	
Attribute	Type	Description
machines	String[]	Symbolic references to the <i>Machine</i> components in the <i>System</i> that are subject to the service. Uses the symbolic component reference notation previously described (“#<name>”).
network	string	Symbolic reference to the <i>Network</i> Resource in the <i>System</i> that enables this service. The <i>Network</i> shall provide the necessary connections between <i>Machines</i> to support this <i>Service</i> ..
heartbeat	Integer	Heartbeat frequency, in term of millisecs between an heartbeat and the next.
replicationType	String	The kind of disk replication data (it does not refer to the <i>Volume</i> Resource) allowable <u>values are</u> : synchronous , asynchronous , none , onlyAtClusterCreation
RPO	Integer	Recovery Point Objective (duration in minutes) in case of asynchronous replica of the disks.

2532

2533 **5.14 Machine Resources and relationships**2534 **5.14.1 Machine**

2535 An instantiated compute Resource that encapsulates both CPU and Memory. Table 16 describes the
 2536 *Machine* attributes.

2537 **Table 16 – Machine attributes**

Name	Machine	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	string	<p>The operational state of the <i>Machine</i>. Allowed values are: CREATING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being created. STARTING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being started. STARTED: The <i>Machine</i> is available and ready for use. STOPPING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being stopped. STOPPED: This value is the virtual equivalent of powering off a physical <i>Machine</i>. There is no saved CPU or memory state. Clause 0 defines the initial state of a <i>Machine</i>. PAUSING: The <i>Machine</i> in the process of being PAUSED.</p>

Name	Machine	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine	
Attribute	Type	Description
		<p>PAUSED: In this state the <i>Machine</i> and its virtual resources remain instantiated and resources remain allocated, similar to the "STARTED" state, but the <i>Machine</i> and its virtual resources are not enabled to perform tasks. This is equivalent to a "stand-by" state.</p> <p>SUSPENDING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being suspended.</p> <p>SUSPENDED: In this state the <i>Machine</i> and its virtual resources are stored on non-volatile storage. The <i>Machine</i> and its resources are not enabled to perform tasks.</p> <p>CAPTURING: If the <i>Machine</i> is undergoing the "capture" operation its state may be set to "CAPTURING". If some operations that were accepted by the <i>Machine</i> before the capture are no longer available during the capture, the <i>Machine</i> shall be in state "CAPTURING".</p> <p>RESTORING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being restored from a <i>MachineImage</i>.</p> <p>DELETING: The <i>Machine</i> is in the process of being deleted.</p> <p>ERROR: The Provider has detected an error in the <i>Machine</i>.</p> <p>FAILED: the <i>Machine</i> is not operational due to some error condition and in accordance to the Provider's policies it is considered <i>failed</i>. This state calls for a recovery procedure, if any.</p> <p>The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.14.1.2.</p>
cpu	integer	The amount of CPU that this <i>Machine</i> has.
memory	integer	The size of the memory (RAM) in kibibytes allocated to this <i>Machine</i> . If this value is increased, it implies that the <i>Machine</i> is allocated more RAM, and vice versa if the value is decreased.
disks	collection [Disk]	A reference to the list of disks (local storage) that are part of the <i>Machine</i> . Adding an element to this list creates a disk. The <i>Disk</i> Resources are components of the <i>Machine</i> . Note: The <i>Disk</i> Resource type is defined in clause 5.14.1.1.1.
cpuArch	string	The CPU architecture that is supported by <i>Machines</i> created by using this configuration. Allowed values are: 68000 , Alpha , ARM , Itanium , MIPS , PA_RISC , POWER , PowerPC , x86 , x86_64 , z/Architecture , SPARC . Providers may define additional values.
cpuSpeed	integer	The approximate CPU speed of this <i>Machine</i> - in megahertz.
volumes	collection [located Volume]	A reference to the list of references to <i>Volumes</i> that are connected to this <i>Machine</i> . Adding a <i>Volume</i> to this list means that the <i>Machine</i> has some access to the data on the <i>Volume</i> . Removing a <i>Volume</i> from this list means that the <i>Machine</i> no longer has access to the data on the <i>Volume</i> . Note: . This Collection has the semantics of usage of the <i>Volumes</i> by the <i>Machine</i> (deleting the <i>Machine</i> does not cause the deletion of the referred <i>Volumes</i>). It is defined in clause 5.14.1.1.2.

Name	Machine	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine	
Attribute	Type	Description
interfaces	<i>collection</i> <i>[Network Interface]</i>	A reference to a list of references to <code>NetworkInterfaces</code> on this <code>Machine</code> . Each <code>NetworkInterface</code> Resource is a component of the <code>Machine</code> Resource. Each <code>NetworkInterface</code> instance represents an association between the <code>Machine</code> and a <code>Network</code> . <code>NetworkInterfaces</code> are defined in clause 5.16.13.
latestSnapshot	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>SNAPSHOT</code> representing the latest state captured for this <code>Machine</code> (either most recent <code>Snapshot</code> or the last <code>Snapshot</code> reverted to). Constraints: Provider: support optional; mutable Consumer: support optional; read-only
snapshots	<i>collection</i> <i>[MachineImage]</i>	A reference to the list of references to the <code>MachineImages</code> of type <code>SNAPSHOT</code> taken of this <code>Machine</code> . This Collection has the semantics of usage of <code>SNAPSHOT MachineImages</code> by the <code>Machine</code> (The deletion of the <code>Machine</code> does not cause the deletion of the referred <code>Snapshots</code> .)
meters	<i>collection</i> <i>[Meter]</i>	A reference to the list of <code>Meters</code> monitored for this <code>Machine</code> .
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this <code>Machine</code> .

2538 When implementing or using `Machine`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and
 2539 semantics of its attributes as described in Table 16, as well as in the tables describing embedded
 2540 Resources or related Collections.

2541 5.14.1.1 Collections

2542 The following clause describes the Collection Resources components of `Machines`.

2543 5.14.1.1.1 Disk Collection

2544 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "`Disk`", defined in Table 17:

2545 **Table 17 – Disk attributes**

Name	Disk	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Disk	
Attribute	Type	Description
capacity	<i>integer</i>	The initial capacity, in kilobytes, of the disk.
initialLocation	<i>string</i>	Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where this disk first appears. After deployment, Consumers may consider moving the location of this <code>Disk</code> .. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider can report this information back to the Consumer.

2546 5.14.1.1.2 volumes Collection

2547 The referred Resource type for each item of this Collection is "`Volume`". However because there is an
 2548 accessory attribute (`initialLocation`), this is not a basic but an enhanced `Volume` Collection. The name
 2549 "`locatedVolume`" is used to define the type of each Collection item. The accessory attribute is defined in
 2550 Table 18:

2551

Table 18 – locatedVolume accessory attributes

Name	locatedVolume	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/locatedVolume	
Attribute	Type	Description
initialLocation	string	Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where this Volume first appears. Note, once deployed, Consumers might move the location of this Volume. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider can report this information back to the Consumer.

2552 The resourceURI attribute value for the Collection of locatedVolume items is:

2553 `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/locatedVolumeCollection.`

2554 5.14.1.1.3 interfaces Collection

2555 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “NetworkInterface”, defined in clause 5.16.13.

2556 The Collection is a basic NetworkInterfaceCollection as described in clause 5.16.14.

2557 5.14.1.1.4 snapshots Collection

2558 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “MachineImage”. It is a basic MachineImage

2559 Collection. Its serialization is described in the MachineImageCollection Resource clause.

2560 5.14.1.1.5 meters Collection

2561 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “Meter” as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 2562 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic Meter Collection (serialized as
 2563 described in 5.5.12). See the MeterCollection Resource clause.

2564 5.14.1.2 Operations

2565 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 2566 MachineCollection Resource.

2567 The following custom operations are also defined:

2568 start

2569 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start`

2570 This operation shall start a Machine.

2571 Input parameters: None.

2572 Output parameters: None.

2573 During the processing of this operation, the Machine shall be in the “STARTING” state.

2574 Upon successful completion of this operation, the Machine shall be in the “STARTED” state.

2575 If a Machine is in the “STOPPED” state, starting it shall be the virtual equivalent of powering on a
 2576 physical machine. There is no restored CPU or Memory state, so the guest OS typically performs boot or
 2577 installation tasks.

2578 If the Machine was in the “SUSPENDED” or “PAUSED” state, starting it shall have the effect of
 2579 resuming it.

2580 HTTP protocol

2581 To start a `Machine`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start" URI of the
2582 `Machine` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2583 **JSON media type:** application/json

2584 **JSON serialization:**

```
2585 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2586   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start",
2587   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2588   ...
2589 }
```

2590 **XML media type:** application/xml

2591 **XML serialization**

```
2592 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2593   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start </action>
2594   <properties>
2595     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2596   </properties>
2597   <xs:any>*
2598 </Action>
```

2599 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2600 **stop**

2601 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop

2602 This operation shall stop a `Machine`.

2603 Input parameters:

- 2604 1) "force" - type: boolean - optional
- 2605 2) A flag to indicate whether the Provider shall simulate a power off condition (force=true) or shall
2606 simulate a shutdown operation that allows applications to save their state and the file system to
2607 be made consistent (force=false). Inclusion of this parameter by Consumers is optional and if
2608 not specified, the Provider may choose either mechanism. Providers are encouraged to
2609 advertise this choice by the way of the `MachineStopForceDefault` capability.

2610 Output parameters: None.

2611 During the processing of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the "STOPPING" state.

2612 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the "STOPPED" state. Stopping a
2613 `Machine` with force=true shall be the virtual equivalent of powering off a physical machine. There is no
2614 saved CPU or Memory state. Stopping a `Machine` with force=false shall result in a machine with
2615 consistent file systems.

2616 A Consumer may reissue a stop operation if the state is STOPPING, perhaps with force=true, but
2617 Providers shall not issue a force=true stop operation on their own.

2618 **HTTP protocol**

2619 To stop a *Machine*, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI of the
 2620 *Machine* where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2621 **JSON media type:** application/json

2622 **JSON serialization:**

```
2623 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2624   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
2625   "force": boolean, ?
2626   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2627   ...
2628 }
```

2629 **XML media type:** application/xml

2630 **XML serialization**

```
2631 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2632   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
2633   <force> xs:boolean </force> ?
2634   <properties>
2635     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2636   </properties>
2637   <xs:any>*
2638 </Action>
```

2639 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2640 **restart**

2641 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restart

2642 This operation shall restart a *Machine*. If the *Machine* is in the "STARTED" state, this operation shall
 2643 have the effect of executing the "stop" and then "start" operations. If the *Machine* is in the "STOPPED"
 2644 state, this operation shall have the effect of executing the "start" operation.

2645 Input parameters:

- 2646 1) "force" - type: boolean - optional
- 2647 2) A flag to indicate whether the Provider shall simulate a power off condition (force=true) or shall
 2648 simulate a shutdown operation that allows applications to save their state and the file system to
 2649 be made consistent (force=false). Inclusion of this parameter by Consumers is optional and if
 2650 not specified, the Provider may choose either mechanism. Providers are encouraged to
 2651 advertise this choice by the way of the MachineStopForceDefault capability.

2652 Output parameters: None.

2653 During the processing of this operation, the *Machine* shall be in the "STOPPING" and/or "STARTING"
 2654 states, as appropriate depending on its initial state.

2655 Upon successful completion of this operation, the *Machine* shall be in the "STARTED" state. Restarting
 2656 a *Machine* shall be the virtual equivalent of powering off, and then powering on a physical machine.
 2657 There is no restored CPU or Memory state, so the guest OS typically performs boot or installation tasks.

2658 HTTP protocol

2659 To restart a `Machine`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restart" URI of the
2660 `Machine` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2661 **JSON media type:** application/json

2662 **JSON serialization:**

```
2663 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2664   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restart",
2665   "force": boolean, ?
2666   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2667   ...
2668 }
```

2669 **XML media type:** application/xml

2670 **XML serialization**

```
2671 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2672   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restart </action>
2673   <force> xs:boolean </force> ?
2674   <properties>
2675     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2676   </properties>
2677   <xs:any>*
2678 </Action>
```

2679 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2680 **pause**

2681 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/pause

2682 This operation shall pause a `Machine`.

2683 Input parameters: None.

2684 Output parameters: None.

2685 During the processing of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the "PAUSING" state.

2686 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the "PAUSED" state. Pausing a
2687 `Machine` shall keep the `Machine` and its resources instantiated, but the `Machine` shall not be
2688 available to perform any tasks. The current state of the CPU and Memory shall be retained in volatile
2689 memory.

2690 HTTP protocol

2691 To pause a `Machine`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action.pause" URI of the
2692 `Machine` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2693 **JSON media type:** application/json

2694 **JSON serialization:**

```
2695 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2696   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/pause",
2697   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2698   ...
2699 }
```

2700 **XML media type:** application/xml

2701 **XML serialization**

```
2702 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2703   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/pause </action>
2704   <properties>
2705     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2706   </properties>
2707   <xs:any*>
2708 </Action>
```

2709 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2710 **suspend**

2711 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/suspend

2712 This operation shall suspend a *Machine*.

2713 Input parameters: None.

2714 Output parameters: None.

2715 During the processing of this operation, the *Machine* shall be in the "SUSPENDING" state.

2716 Upon successful completion of this operation, the *Machine* shall be in the "SUSPENDED" state.

2717 Suspending a *Machine* shall keep the *Machine* and its resources instantiated, but the *Machine* shall
2718 not be available to perform any tasks. The current state of the CPU and Memory shall be retained in
2719 non-volatile memory.

2720 **HTTP protocol**

2721 To suspend a *Machine*, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/suspend" URI of
2722 the *Machine* where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2723 **JSON media type:** application/json

2724 **JSON serialization:**

```
2725 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2726   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/suspend",
2727   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2728   ...
2729 }
```

2730 **XML media type:** application/xml

2731 **XML serialization**

```
2732     <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2733         <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/suspend </action>
2734         <properties>
2735             <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2736         </properties>
2737         <xs:any>*
2738     </Action>
```

2739 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2740 **capture**

2741 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/capture

2742 This operation shall create a new `MachineImage` from an existing `Machine`. This operation is defined
2743 within the `MachineImage` Resource; see 5.14.7.1 for more details. Note that while this operation is
2744 performed against a `MachineImage`, its presence in the `Machine` serialization is used to advertise
2745 support for the operation.

2746 **Snapshotting a Machine**

2747 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/snapshot

2748 This operation shall create a new `SNAPSHOT MachineImage` from an existing `Machine`. This
2749 operation is defined within the `MachineImage` Resource; see 5.14.7.1 for more details. Note that while
2750 this operation is performed against a `MachineImage`, its presence in the `Machine` serialization is
2751 used to advertise support for the operation.

2752 **Restoring a Machine**

2753 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore

2754 This operation shall restore a `Machine` from a previously created `MachineImage`.

2755 Input parameters:

- 2756 1) "image" - type: URI - mandatory
- 2757 2) A reference to the `Machine Image`.

2758 Output parameters: None.

2759 During the processing of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the "RESTORING" state.

2760 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Machine` shall be in the same state as the state
2761 specified in the `MachineImage`, if specified. See 0 for more details.

2762 Note that Providers can indicate support for restoring from non-`SNAPSHOT MachineImages` by the
2763 way of the `Machine` "RestoreFromImage" capability. If the `RestoreFromImage` capability is not supported,
2764 and the restore operation is supported, the restore operation can only restore from a `SNAPSHOT`
2765 `MachineImage`.

2766 **HTTP protocol**

2767 To restore a `Machine`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore" URI of the
 2768 `Machine` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

2769 **JSON media type:** application/json

2770 **JSON serialization:**

```
2771 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2772   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore",
2773   "image": { "href": string },
2774   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2775   ...
2776 }
```

2777 **XML media type:** application/xml

2778 **XML serialization**

```
2779 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2780   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore </action>
2781   <image href="xs:anyURI"/>
2782   <properties>
2783     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2784   </properties>
2785   <xs:any>*
2786 </Action>
```

2787 Where the "image" URI is a reference to the `MachineImage` to be used.

2788 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2789 **connectvolume**

2790 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/connectvolume

2791 This operation shall start a `Machine`.

2792 Input parameters: Volume reference, initialLocation, Credentials,

2793 Output parameters: None.

2794 **HTTP protocol**

2795 To connect a Volume to a `Machine`, a POST is sent to the
 2796 "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/connectvolume" URI of the `Machine` where the HTTP
 2797 request body shall be as described below.

2798 **JSON media type:** application/json

2799 **JSON serialization:**

```
2800 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
2801   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/connectvolume",
2802   "volume": { "href": string },
```



```

2803     "initialLocation": string,
2804     "credentials": { "href": string },
2805     "properties": { string: string, + } ?
2806     ...
2807 }

```

2808 **XML media type:** application/xml

2809 **XML serialization**

```

2810 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
2811   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/connectvolume</action>
2812   <volume href="xs:anyURI"/>
2813   <initialLocation>xs:string</initialLocation>
2814   <credentials href="xs:anyURI"/>
2815   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/connectvolume</action>
2816   <properties>
2817     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
2818   </properties>
2819   <xs:any>*
2820 </Action>

```

2821 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

2822

2823 5.14.2 MachineCollection Resource

2824 A `MachineCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Machine` Resources within a
 2825 Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12. Operations

2826 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a `MachineTemplate` be used (see 4.2.1.1).

2827 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the way of the
 2828 `MachineTemplate` "initialState" attribute, the state of the new `Machine` shall be the value of the
 2829 `DefaultInitialState` capability, if defined. If no `DefaultInitialState` capability is defined, the default value shall
 2830 be "STOPPED." The semantics of "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate
 2831 actions against the new `Machine` to move it into that state. Note that this controls the actions of the
 2832 hypervisor and the state of the resources within the `Machine` (e.g., the operating system) are also
 2833 influenced by the data within the `MachineImage` used to create the new `Machine`. For example, if a
 2834 new `Machine`'s `initialState` is "STARTED" and a `SNAPSHOT MachineImage` was used to create the
 2835 new `Machine`, the `Machine` would not be "booted" but rather resume executing from the saved state in
 2836 the `MachineImage`.

2837 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new `Machine` to the appropriate "initialState" (either as
 2838 specified by the `MachineTemplate` or as implied by the previous stated rules), the `Machine` creation
 2839 shall fail.

2840 If a Provider is unable to create the new `Machine` due to invalid or inconsistent credentials in the
 2841 `MachineTemplate`, the `Machine` creation process shall fail. If any credentials are included in the
 2842 `MachineTemplate`, they shall be part of the new `Machine` regardless of the type of
 2843 `MachineImage` used.

2844 **5.14.3 MachineTemplate**

2845 A `MachineTemplate` represents the set of metadata and instructions used in the creation of a
 2846 `Machine`. Table 19 describes the `MachineTemplate` attributes.

2847 **Table 19 – MachineTemplate attributes**

Name	MachineTemplate																
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineTemplate																
Attribute	Type	Description															
initialState	string	The initial state of the new <code>Machine</code> . Possible values include the non-transient states as specified by the <code>Machine</code> "state" attribute (e.g., STARTED, STOPPED) and are determined by the actions supported by the Provider. Providers should advertise the list of available values through the <code>Machine</code> 's "initialStates" capability.															
machineConfig	ref	A reference to the <code>MachineConfiguration</code> that is used to create a <code>Machine</code> from this <code>MachineTemplate</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MachineConfiguration</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MachineConfiguration</code> Resource.															
machineImage	ref	A reference to the <code>MachineImage</code> that is used to create a <code>Machine</code> from this <code>MachineTemplate</code> .															
credential	ref	A reference to the <code>Credential</code> that is used to create the initial login credentials for the new <code>Machine</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>Credential</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>Credential</code> Resource.															
volumes	volume[]	<p>A list of structures, each containing a reference to an existing <code>Volume</code> and potentially describing aspects of the way that the given <code>Volume</code> is to be connected to the <code>Machine</code> during its creation from this <code>MachineTemplate</code>. Each volume structure has the following attributes:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Name</td><td colspan="2">volume</td></tr> <tr> <td>Attribute</td><td>Type</td><td>Description</td></tr> <tr> <td>initialLocation</td><td>string</td><td>An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.</td></tr> <tr> <td>credential</td><td>ref</td><td>Credential for accessing the <code>Volume</code> to be connected (if necessary).</td></tr> <tr> <td>volume</td><td>ref</td><td>Reference to the <code>Volume</code> that is connected.</td></tr> </table>	Name	volume		Attribute	Type	Description	initialLocation	string	An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.	credential	ref	Credential for accessing the <code>Volume</code> to be connected (if necessary).	volume	ref	Reference to the <code>Volume</code> that is connected.
Name	volume																
Attribute	Type	Description															
initialLocation	string	An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.															
credential	ref	Credential for accessing the <code>Volume</code> to be connected (if necessary).															
volume	ref	Reference to the <code>Volume</code> that is connected.															
volumeTemplates	volumeTemplate[]	<p>A list of structures, each containing a reference to a <code>VolumeTemplate</code> from which a <code>Volume</code> is created and connected to the <code>Machine</code> resulting from this <code>MachineTemplate</code>. Each structure can potentially also include aspects of the way in which each created <code>Volume</code> is connected to the created <code>Machine</code>. Credentials associated with the new <code>Volume</code> are same as the Credentials for this <code>Machine</code>. If the <code>Machine</code> is created as part of a <code>System</code> creation, the <code>Volumes</code> created from these <code>Templates</code> are considered as part of that <code>System</code> without the need for these <code>VolumeTemplates</code> to also be listed in the <code>volumeTemplates</code> attribute of the relevant <code>SystemTemplate</code>. If the same <code>VolumeTemplate</code> reference is listed in both the <code>volumeTemplates</code></p>															

Name	MachineTemplate													
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineTemplate													
Attribute	Type	Description												
		<p>attribute of a <code>SystemTemplate</code> and in the <code>volumeTemplates</code> attribute of a <code>MachineTemplate</code> component of that <code>SystemTemplate</code>, this means that multiple, distinct <code>Volume</code> instances are created as part of the overall <code>System</code> creation. Each <code>volumeTemplate</code> structure has the following attributes:</p> <table> <tr> <td>Name</td><td colspan="2"><i>volumeTemplate</i></td></tr> <tr> <td>Attribute</td><td>Type</td><td>Description</td></tr> <tr> <td>initialLocation</td><td><i>string</i></td><td>An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.</td></tr> <tr> <td>volumeTemplate</td><td><i>ref</i></td><td>Reference to the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> that is used to create a new <code>Volume</code>. Note that the attributes of the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>VolumeTemplate</code> Resource.</td></tr> </table>	Name	<i>volumeTemplate</i>		Attribute	Type	Description	initialLocation	<i>string</i>	An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.	volumeTemplate	<i>ref</i>	Reference to the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> that is used to create a new <code>Volume</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>VolumeTemplate</code> Resource.
Name	<i>volumeTemplate</i>													
Attribute	Type	Description												
initialLocation	<i>string</i>	An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where the <code>Volume</code> appears. Support of this attribute indicates that the Provider allows for Consumers to choose where the <code>Volume</code> appears.												
volumeTemplate	<i>ref</i>	Reference to the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> that is used to create a new <code>Volume</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>VolumeTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>VolumeTemplate</code> Resource.												
interfaceTemplates	<i>Network Interface Template[]</i>	<p>A list of references to <code>NetworkInterfaceTemplates</code> that shall be used to create a new set of <code>NetworkInterface</code> Resources for the new <code>Machine</code>. Note that the attributes of a <code>NetworkInterfaceTemplate</code> may be given instead of a reference to an existing <code>NetworkInterfaceTemplate</code> Resource.</p>												
userData	<i>string</i>	A Base64 encoded string whose decoded version is to be injected into <code>Machines</code> created by using this Template. See the discussion of injection of user-defined data below.												
meterTemplates	<i>meterTemplates[]</i>	<p>A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <code>Meters</code> to the new <code>Machine</code>. Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.</p>												
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	<p>A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>Machine</code>. Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.</p>												
genResourceMetadata	<i>ref</i>	A reference to a <code>ResourceMetadata</code> that shall be associated with every <code>Machine</code> generated from this Template.												

2848 When implementing or using `MachineTemplate`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax
 2849 and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 19, as well as in the tables describing embedded
 2850 Resources or related Collections.

2851 Injection of user-defined data

2852 To simplify the customization of individual `Machines`, it is possible to pass arbitrary data into the new
 2853 `Machine` by using the `userData` parameter. The value of this parameter shall be the Base64-encoded

2854 payload. The Provider shall arrange for this data to be available from inside the `Machine` by using one
2855 of the following methods:

2856 1. *Metadata server*: The data can be retrieved from within the instance by using an HTTP GET
2857 request to `http://169.254.169.254/cimi/latest/user-data`.

2858 2. *Disk*: The `Machine` has access to a Disk with an ISO 9660 file system on it. The data can be
2859 found in a file at `<location>/cimi/user-data`.

2860 3. *Image modification*: The Provider modifies the root file system of the machine image just before
2861 launching the `Machine`. In UNIX-like operating systems, the data can be found in the file
2862 `/var/lib/cimi/user-data`.

2863 It is strongly recommended that Providers implement a `metadata server`, or, failing that, injection by
2864 the way of `Disk`, as `image modification` is brittle and may not work for every operating system in
2865 use. The Provider shall indicate which of these three methods is supported with the `Machine` 'UserData'
2866 capability in the `ResourceMetadata` for `Machines`. The value for this feature shall be one of
2867 `metadata`, `disk`, or `imgmod`, corresponding to the three methods listed above.

2868 The Provider shall preserve this data across restarts of the `Machine`. The data is the Base64-decoded
2869 version of the data that was passed into the `MachineCreate` request.

2870 5.14.3.1 Operations

2871 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
2872 `MachineTemplateCollection` Resource.

2873 5.14.4 MachineTemplateCollection Resource

2874 A `MachineTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `MachineTemplate`
2875 Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12. Operations

2876 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MachineTemplate`
2877 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
2878 4.2.1.1.

2879 5.14.5 MachineConfiguration Resource

2880 The `MachineConfiguration` Resource represents the set of configuration values that define the
2881 (virtual) hardware resources of a to-be-realized `Machine` Instance. `MachineConfigurations` are
2882 created by Providers and may, at the Providers discretion, be created by Consumers.

2883 Table 20 describes the `MachineConfiguration` attributes.

2884 **Table 20 – MachineConfiguration attributes**

Name	MachineConfiguration	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineConfiguration	
Attribute	Type	Description
cpu	<i>integer</i>	The amount of CPU that a <code>Machine</code> realized from this configuration.
memory	<i>integer</i>	The amount of RAM, in kibibytes, that a <code>Machine</code> realized from this configuration.
disks	<code>disk[]</code>	A list of structures, each containing the attributes defining the disks to be created for the <code>Machine</code> instantiated with this <code>MachineConfiguration</code> Resource. The disks are local storage to the <code>Machine</code> . Each disks attribute has the following sub-attributes:

Name	MachineConfiguration			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineConfiguration			
Attribute	Type	Description		
		Name	<i>disk</i>	
		Attribute	Type	Description
		capacity	<i>integer</i>	The initial capacity, in kilobytes, of the disk described by this attribute.
		format	<i>string</i>	The format/type of this disk (e.g., ext4, NTFS).
		initialLocation	<i>string</i>	An Operating System-specific location (path) in its namespace where this <i>Disk</i> first appears. After creation of a <i>Machine</i> , Consumers may change the location of this <i>Disk</i> .
cpuArch	<i>string</i>	The CPU architecture that is supported by <i>Machines</i> created by using this configuration. Allowed values are: 68000 , Alpha , ARM , Itanium , MIPS , PA_RISC , POWER , PowerPC , x86 , x86_64 , z/Architecture , SPARC . Providers may define additional values.		
cpuSpeed	<i>integer</i>	The approximate CPU speed of this Machine in megahertz.		

2885 NOTE The disk attributes "format" does not appear on Machine Resources because after the *Machine* is
2886 created, the user of the *Machine* is able modify this attribute of a disk, possibly without the Provider's knowledge.
2887 Therefore these attributes might not be an aspect of the *Machine* that the Provider can reliably manage.

2888 5.14.5.1 Operations

2889 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
2890 *MachineConfigurationCollection* Resource.

2891 5.14.6 MachineConfigurationCollection Resource

2892 A *MachineConfigurationCollection* Resource represents the Collection of
2893 *MachineConfiguration* Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in
2894 clause 5.5.12.

2895 5.14.6.1 Operations

2896 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new *MachineConfiguration*
2897 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
2898 4.2.1.1.

2899 5.14.7 MachineImage Resource

2900 This Resource represents the information necessary for hardware virtualized Resources to create a
2901 *Machine* Instance; it contains configuration data such as startup instructions, including possible
2902 combinations of the following items, depending on the "type" of *MachineImage* created:

- 2903 • The software image (i.e., a copy of an installed *Machine*), that is to be instantiated on the disk
2904 and other virtual resources. The image can be a snapshot that consists of disk images plus
2905 memory and other resource state information.
- 2906 • Installation software, which, when executed on the hardware (virtual) resources, builds the
2907 machine instance.
- 2908 • Both a disk image and a set of software and parameters to install new components not included
2909 in the original disk image.

2910 Table 21 describes the `MachineImage` attributes.

2911 **Table 21 – MachineImage attributes**

Name		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MachineImage		
Attribute	Type	Description
state	string	<p>The operational state of the <code>MachineImage</code>. Allowed values are: CREATING: The <code>MachineImage</code> is in the process of being created. AVAILABLE: The <code>MachineImage</code> is available and ready for use. Unless otherwise specified, the <code>MachineImage</code> shall initially be in this state after successful creation. DELETING: The <code>MachineImage</code> is in the process of being deleted. ERROR: The Provider has detected an error in the <code>MachineImage</code>. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.14.7.1</p>
type	string	<p>The type of <code>MachineImage</code> that is represented by this Resource. This specification defines the following values:</p> <p>IMAGE: This type represents the persisted data of a stopped <code>Machine</code>. Unlike "snapshots", it does not contain any runtime information. If this value is used, the "relatedImage" attribute shall not be present.</p> <p>SNAPSHOT: This type represents the persisted data of a <code>Machine</code>. If the <code>Machine</code> was not in a stopped state when his Image was created, it also contains runtime information. If this value is used, the "relatedImage" attribute shall reference the most recently created (or reverted to) snapshot Image for that <code>Machine</code>, which allows for easy discovery of the "previous" snapshot. The "relatedImage" attribute shall not be set by Consumers.</p> <p>PARTIAL_SNAPSHOT: This type follows the same semantics as the "SNAPSHOT" <code>MachineImage</code> except that it contains just the changes (deltas) made to the <code>Machine</code> based on the referenced "relatedImage" <code>MachineImage</code> rather than a complete representation of the <code>Machine</code>.</p> <p>If a <code>MachineImage</code> is deleted, the following semantics shall apply:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Any "SNAPSHOT" <code>MachineImages</code> that have a "relatedImage" value that references the deleted <code>MachineImage</code> shall have that value changed to the "relatedImage" attribute of the delete <code>MachineImage</code>. Any "PARTIAL_SNAPSHOT" <code>MachineImages</code> that have a "relatedImage" value that references the deleted <code>MachineImage</code> shall also be deleted. This detail applies recursively to any subsequent "PARTIAL_SNAPSHOT" <code>MachineImages</code> as well.
imageLocation	URI	A reference to the location of the binary data that makes up this image.
relatedImage	ref	A reference to another <code>MachineImage</code> Resource that is related to this one. The specific meaning of this value varies depending on the type of <code>MachineImage</code> .

2912

2913 5.14.7.1 Operations

2914 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
2915 `MachineImageCollection` Resource.

2916 If creating a new `MachineImage`, the representation of the new `MachineImage` may include a
2917 reference in the "imageLocation" attribute. Providers shall inspect this reference (most likely by the way of

an HTTP HEAD) to determine if any special processing is required. This specification defines the following additional steps that Providers shall take depending on the type of Resource being referenced:

<http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Machine>

If the "imageLocation" is a reference to a Machine, the Provider shall create a new MachineImage based on the Machine being referenced. The machine is captured or snapshotted, depending on whether the request was sent to the "<http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/capture>" or the "<http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/snapshot>" URI of the Machine. However the resulting resource, although linked to the Machine from which it was originated, shall be a MachineImage for all purposes and can be used for creating new machines.

If creating a SNAPSHOT and upon completion of the create operation, the MachineImage's "imageLocation" attribute shall not reference the Machine (as the Machine might change over time), but instead it shall reference (or contain the data of) the static representation of the Machine. Additionally, the referenced Machine's MachineSnapshotCollection shall be updated to include a reference to this newly created SNAPSHOT MachineImage Resource. If the Machine is unable to accept operations at any point while it is being captured to create the MachineImage, the Machine shall be in state "CAPTURING".

5.14.8 MachineImageCollection Resource

A MachineImageCollection Resource represents the Collection of MachineImage Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

5.14.8.1 Operations

This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new MachineImage Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1, where the request body and the way it is processed are described in clause 5.14.7.1.

5.14.9 Credential Resource

A Credential Resource contains the information required to create the initial administrative superuser of a newly created Machine or to represent the credentials needed to perform some operation. Due to the variation between operating systems and Providers, this specification does not mandate one particular set of attributes that all implementations need to support. However, Providers are expected to extend this Resource with additional attributes to meet their requirements.

For example, a Provider might extend this Resource with username and password attributes, which would then be the login information for new Machines. These extension attributes would appear as siblings to the common attributes like "name" and "description."

Table 22 describes the Credential attributes.

Table 22 – Credential attributes

Name	Credential	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Credential	
Attribute	Type	Description
TBD		The exact set of attributes is determined by the Provider.

Some common extension attributes that Providers might use include:

2953 **Table 23 – UserName/Password attributes**

Attribute	Type	Description
userName	<i>string</i>	Initial superuser's user name.
password	<i>string</i>	Initial superuser's password.

2954 **Table 24 – Public key attributes**

Attribute	Type	Description
key	<i>byte[]</i>	The digit of the public key for the initial superuser.

2955 **5.14.9.1** When implementing or using `Credential`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the
 2956 syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in the above table, as well as in the table
 2957 describing related Collections. **Operations**

2958 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 2959 `CredentialCollection` Resource.

2960 **5.14.10 CredentialCollection Resource**

2961 A `CredentialCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Credential` Resources within
 2962 a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

2963 **5.14.10.1 Operations**

2964 NOTE The "add" operation requires that a `CredentialTemplate` be used (see 4.2.1.1).

2965 **5.14.11 CredentialTemplate Resource**

2966 This Resource captures the configuration values for realizing a `Credential` Resource. A
 2967 `CredentialTemplate` may be used to create multiple `Credentials`. Table 25 describes the
 2968 `CredentialTemplate` attributes.

2969 **Table 25 – CredentialTemplate attributes**

Name	<code>CredentialTemplate</code>	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/CredentialTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
<i>TBD</i>		The exact set of attributes is determined by the provider.

2970 When implementing or using `CredentialTemplate`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the
 2971 syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 25 as well as in the table describing related
 2972 Collections.

2973 **5.14.11.1 Operations**

2974 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 2975 `CredentialTemplateCollection` Resource.

2976 **5.14.12 CredentialTemplateCollection Resource**

2977 A `CredentialTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 2978 `CredentialTemplate` Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in
 2979 clause 5.5.12.

2980 **5.14.12.1 Operations**

2981 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `CredentialTemplate`
 2982 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
 2983 4.2.1.1.

2984 **5.15 Volume Resources and relationships**2985 **5.15.1 Volume**

2986 A `Volume` represents storage at either the block or the file-system level. `Volumes` can be connected to
 2987 `Machines`. Once connected, `Volumes` can be accessed by processes on that `Machine`. Table 26
 2988 describes the `Volume` attributes.

2989 **Table 26 – Volume attributes**

Name	Volume	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Volume	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	string	The operational state of the Volume. Allowed values are: CREATING : The Volume is in the process of being created. AVAILABLE : The Volume is available and ready for use. Unless otherwise specified, the Volume shall be in this state initially after successful creation. CAPTURING : The Volume is in the process of being captured (snapshotted) into a new VolumeImage. RESTORING : The Volume is in the process of being restored. DELETING : The Volume is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the Volume. <u>The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.15.1.2</u>
type	URI	A URI that indicates the type of Volume to be created. This specification defines the following URI: http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/mapped : Indicates a Volume that shall be used for shared storage that might be available to multiple Machines, but which does not require an explicit mount operation from within the guest operating system. Additional values may be defined. If certain types of Volumes require additional data, it is expected that this Resource is extended. For example, a "sharedFileSystem" type might require additional networking information and credentials to be specified.
capacity	integer	The maximum size, if limited, of the Volume in kilobytes. If this value is increased, the Volume can contain more data. Decreasing this value may require evaluations.
bootable	boolean	This property indicates whether this Volume is bootable.
images	collection [Volume Image]	A reference to the list of references to VolumeImages that represent snapshots taken from the Volume. Note: . This Collection has the semantics of usage of VolumeImages by the Volume (deleting the Volume does not cause the deletion of the referred VolumeImages)
meters	collection [Meter]	A reference to the list of Meters monitored for this Volume.
eventLog	ref	A reference to the EventLog of this Volume.

2990 When implementing or using `Volume`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and
 2991 semantics of its attributes as described in the above table as well as in the tables describing embedded
 2992 Resources or related Collections.

2993 **5.15.1.1 Collections**

2994 The following clauses describe the Collection Resources owned by `Volumes`.

2995 **5.15.1.1.1 images Collection**

2996 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "`VolumeImage`". There is no accessory attribute
 2997 for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `VolumeImage` Collection (serialized as described
 2998 in 5.5.12).

2999 See the `VolumeImageCollection` Resource clause.

3000 NOTE Previous versions of this specification included an "add" operation on this Resource. It is now deprecated in
 3001 favor of creating a new `VolumeImage` with the `imageLocation` attribute pointing to the `Volume` to be captured.

3002 **5.15.1.1.2 meters Collection**

3003 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "`Meter`" as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3004 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `Meter` Collection (serialized as
 3005 described in 5.5.12).

3006 See the `MeterCollection` Resource clause.

3007 **5.15.1.2 Operations**

3008 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 3009 `VolumeCollection` Resource.

3010 In addition also the following custom operations are supported.

3011 **snapshot**

3012 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/snapshot`

3013 This operation shall create a new `VolumeImage` from an existing `Volume`. This operation is defined
 3014 within the `VolumeImage` Resource; see 5.15.7.1 for more details. Note that while this operation is
 3015 performed against a `VolumeImage`, its presence in the `Volume` serialization is used to advertise
 3016 support for the operation.

3017 If the `Volume` is unable to accept operations at any point while it is creating the `VolumeImage`, the
 3018 `Volume` shall be in the state "CAPTURING".

3019 **restore**

3020 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore`

3021 This operation shall restore a `Volume` from a previously created `VolumeImage`.

3022 Input parameters:

- 3023 1) "image" - type: ref - mandatory
- 3024 2) A reference to the `VolumeImage`.

3025 Output parameters: None.

During the processing of this operation, the `Volume` shall be in the "RESTORING" state.

Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Volume` shall again be in the state "AVAILABLE".

HTTP protocol

To restore a `Volume`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore" URI of the `Volume` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

JSON media type: application/json

JSON serialization:

```
{ "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
  "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore",
  "image": { "href" : string },
  "properties": { string: string, + } ?
  ...
}
```

XML media type: application/xml

XML serialization

```
<Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
  <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/restore </action>
  <image href="xs:anyURI"/>
  <properties>
    <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
  </properties>
  <xs:any>*
</Action>
```

Where the "image" ref content is a reference to the `VolumeImage` to be used.

Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

5.15.2 VolumeCollection Resource

A `VolumeCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Volumes` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

5.15.2.1 Operations

NOTE The "add" operation requires that a `VolumeTemplate` be used (see 4.2.1.1).

5.15.3 VolumeTemplate Resource

This Resource captures the configuration values for realizing a `Volume`. A `VolumeTemplate` may be used to create multiple `Volumes`. Table 27 describes the `VolumeTemplate` attributes.

3059

Table 27 – VolumeTemplate attributes

VolumeTemplate		
Name	VolumeTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/VolumeTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
volumeConfig	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the VolumeConfiguration that is used to create a Volume from this VolumeTemplate. Note that the attributes of the VolumeConfiguration may be specified rather than a reference to an existing VolumeConfiguration Resource.
volumeImage	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the VolumeImage that is used to create a Volume from this VolumeTemplate.
meterTemplates	<i>Meter Templates[]</i>	A list of references to MeterTemplates that shall be used to create and connect a set of new Meters to the new Volume. Note that the attributes of the MeterTemplate may be specified rather than a reference to an existing MeterTemplate Resource.
eventLog Template	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an EventLogTemplate that shall be used to create and connect a new EventLog to the new Volume. Note that the attributes of the EventLogTemplate may be specified rather than a reference to an existing EventLogTemplate Resource.
genResourceMetadata	<i>ref</i>	A reference to a ResourceMetadata that shall be associated with every Volume generated from this Template.

3060 When implementing or using VolumeTemplate, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax
 3061 and semantics of its attributes as described in the above table as well as in the tables describing
 3062 embedded Resources or related Collections.

3063 5.15.3.1 Operations

3064 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 3065 VolumeTemplateCollection Resource.

3066 5.15.4 VolumeTemplateCollection Resource

3067 A VolumeTemplateCollection Resource represents the Collection of VolumeTemplate
 3068 Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3069 5.15.4.1 Operations

3070 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new VolumeTemplate
 3071 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
 3072 4.2.1.1.

3073 5.15.5 VolumeConfiguration Resource

3074 The VolumeConfiguration Resource represents the set of configuration values needed to create a
 3075 Volume with certain characteristics. VolumeConfigurations are created by Providers and may, at
 3076 the Providers discretion, be created by Consumers.

3077 Table 28 describes the VolumeConfiguration attributes.

3078

Table 28 – VolumeConfiguration attributes

Name	VolumeConfiguration	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/VolumeConfiguration	
Attribute	Type	Description
type	URI	A URI that indicates the type of Volume to be created. This specification defines the following URI: http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/mapped : Indicates a Volume that shall be used for shared storage that might be available to multiple Machines, but which does not require an explicit mount operation from within the guest operating system. Additional values may be defined. If certain types of Volumes require additional data, it is expected that this Resource is extended.
format	string	The format of the file system that is placed on Volumes created from this configuration. This attribute is only meaningful for VolumeConfigurations that describe block devices. This attribute is optional; the absence of this attribute indicates that Volumes created from this configuration are not formatted with a file system. Example values: "ext4," "ntfs."
capacity	integer	The default size in kilobytes, if limited, of the Volume created from this VolumeConfiguration.

3079 5.15.5.1 Operations

3080 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 3081 VolumeConfigurationCollection Resource.

3082 5.15.6 VolumeConfigurationCollection Resource

3083 A VolumeConfigurationCollection Resource represents the Collection of
 3084 VolumeConfiguration Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in
 3085 clause 5.5.12.

3086 5.15.6.1 Operations

3087 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new VolumeImage Resources is
 3088 supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operations' URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3089 5.15.7 VolumeImage Resource

3090 This Resource represents an image that could be placed on a preloaded volume. Table 29 describes the
 3091 VolumeImage attributes.

3092 Table 29 – VolumeImage attributes

Name	VolumeImage	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/VolumeImage	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	string	The operational state of the VolumeImage. Allowed values are: CREATING : The VolumeImage is in the process of being created. AVAILABLE : The VolumeImage is available and ready for use. Unless otherwise specified, the VolumeImage shall initially be in this state after successful creation. DELETING : The VolumeImage is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the VolumeImage. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.15.7.1
imageLocation	URI	A reference to the location of the binary data that makes up this image.

Name	VolumeImage	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/VolumeImage	
Attribute	Type	Description
bootable	<i>boolean</i>	This property indicates whether Volumes created from this VolumeImage are bootable.

3093 5.15.7.1 Operations

3094 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
3095 VolumeImageCollection Resource.

3096 5.15.8 VolumeImageCollection Resource

3097 A VolumeImageCollection Resource represents the Collection of VolumeImage Resources
3098 within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3099 5.15.8.1 Operations

3100 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new VolumeImage Resources is
3101 supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3102 During the creation of a new VolumeImage Resource, if the "imageLocation" attribute refers to an
3103 existing Volume, this operation shall be interpreted as a request to create a snapshot of the Volume.
3104 Once completed, the "imageLocation" attribute of the new VolumeImage Resource shall not refer to the
3105 original Volume; instead it shall refer to a static copy of the Volume. Additionally, the referenced
3106 Volume's VolumeImageCollection shall be updated to include a reference to this newly created
3107 snapshot VolumeImage Resource. During this process, the Provider may put the Volume into a
3108 "CAPTURING" state if necessary.

3109 5.16 Network Resources and relationships

3110 A Network is a logical construct that allows communication between defined Endpoints within a Segment.
3111 Each Segment uses a single, fixed, protocol to communicate and access is provided by associating an
3112 Endpoint with an Interface.

3113 Only Endpoints within a Segment can communicate implicitly. All other communication must be explicitly
3114 enabled using Network Services.

- 3115 • Each Network has one or more Segments
- 3116 • Each Segment supports communication using a single protocol
- 3117 • Each Segment may have one or more addressable Endpoints
- 3118 • Each Endpoint is associated with a single Segment
- 3119 • Each Endpoint may be associated with a single Interface
- 3120 • An Interface can be associated with more than one Endpoint
- 3121 • A Network may contain subordinate Networks to form hierarchical structures (similar to Systems)
- 3122 • One or more Services may be associated with a Network to provide additional functionality

5.16.1 Network

Table 30 describes the `Network` Resource attributes.

Table 30 – Network attributes

Name	Network	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Network	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The operational state of the <code>Network</code> . Allowed values are: CREATING : The <code>Network</code> is in the process of being created. STARTING : The <code>Network</code> is in the process of being started. STARTED : The <code>Network</code> is available and ready for use. STOPPING : The <code>Network</code> is in the process of being stopped. STOPPED : The <code>Network</code> is stopped and not available for use. DELETING : The <code>Network</code> is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the <code>Network</code> . <u>The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.16.1.2. Clause 0 defines the initial state of a <code>Network</code>.</u>
segments	<i>collection</i> <i>[Protocol Segment]</i>	A reference to a Collection of Segments contained within this <code>Network</code> .
services	<i>collection</i> <i>[Network Service]</i>	A reference to a Collection of Services that may be applied to this <code>Network</code> .
subnetworks	<i>collection</i> <i>[Network]</i>	A reference to a Collection of subordinate <code>Networks</code> contained within this <code>Network</code> .
meters	<i>collection</i> <i>[Meter]</i>	A reference to the list of <code>Meters</code> monitored for this <code>Network</code> .
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this <code>Network</code> .

The Provider should supply at least one `Network` Resource in the CEP `Networks` Collection to represent communication channels that are external to the Consumers cloud. Typically this would be a connection to the Internet. As an alternative the Provider may supply a `NetworkTemplate` Resource by which such external `Networks` can be created when required.

When implementing or using `Network` Resources, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 30 as well as in the tables describing embedded Resources or related Collections. Both Consumer and Provider shall serialize this Resource as described below. The following pseudo-schemas (see notation in 1.3) describe the serialization of the Resource in both JSON and XML.

5.16.1.1 Collections

The following clauses describe the Collection Resources that are components of `Networks`.

5.16.1.1.1 segments Collection

The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “`ProtocolSegment`”. There is no accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `ProtocolSegmentCollection`, as described in 5.16.6.

3141 **5.16.1.1.2 services Collection**

3142 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "NetworkService". There is no accessory
 3143 attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic NetworkServiceCollection, as
 3144 described in 5.16.18

3145 **5.16.1.1.3 subnetworks Collection**

3146 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Network". There is no accessory attribute for the
 3147 items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic NetworkCollection, as described in 5.16.2.

3148 **5.16.1.1.4 meters Collection**

3149 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Meter" as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3150 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic MeterCollection as
 3151 described in 5.5.12.

3152 See the MeterCollection Resource clause.

3153 **5.16.1.2 Operations**

3154 Network Resources support the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 3155 NetworkCollection Resource, as described in 5.16.2.

3156 The following custom operations are also defined:

3157 **start**

3158 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start`

3159 This operation shall recursively start and enable all the components within a Network.

3160 Input parameters: None.

3161 Output parameters: None.

3162 During the processing of this operation, the Network shall be in the "STARTING" state.

3163 Upon successful completion of this operation, the Network shall be in the "STARTED" state.

3164 **HTTP protocol**

3165 To start a Network, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start" URI of the
 3166 Network where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3167 **JSON media type:** application/json

3168 **JSON serialization:**

```
3169 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3170   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start",
3171   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3172   ...
3173 }
```


3174 **XML media type:** application/xml

3175 **XML serialization**

```
3176 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3177   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start </action>
3178   <properties>
3179     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3180   </properties> ?
3181   <xs:any>*
3182 </Action>
```

3183 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3184 **stop**

3185 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop

3186 This operation shall recursively stop and disable all components of a *Network*.

3187 Input parameters: None.

3188 Output parameters: None.

3189 During the processing of this operation, the *Network* shall be in the "STOPPING" state.

3190 Upon successful completion of this operation, the *Network* shall be in the "STOPPED" state.

3191 **HTTP protocol**

3192 To stop a *Network*, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI of the
3193 *Network* where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3194 **JSON media type:** application/json

3195 **JSON serialization:**

```
3196 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3197   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
3198   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3199   ...
3200 }
```

3201 **XML media type:** application/xml

3202 **XML serialization**

```
3203 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3204   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
3205   <properties>
3206     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3207   </properties> ?
3208   <xs:any>*
3209 </Action>
```

3210 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3211 5.16.2 NetworkCollection Resource

3212 A `NetworkCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Networks` and follows the Collection
3213 pattern that is defined in clause 5.5.12. Operations

3214 NOTE The "add" operation requires that a `NetworkTemplate` be used (see 5.16.3).

3215 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the way of the
3216 `NetworkTemplate` "initialState" attribute, the state of the new `Network` shall be the value of the
3217 `DefaultInitialState` capability of the `Network` Resource's `ResourceMetadata`, if defined. If no
3218 `DefaultInitialState` capability is defined, the default value shall be "STOPPED." The semantics of
3219 "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate actions against the new `Network`
3220 to move it into that state.

3221 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new `Network` to the appropriate "initialState" (either as
3222 specified by the `NetworkTemplate` or as implied by the previous stated rules), the `Network` creation
3223 shall fail.

3224 5.16.3 NetworkTemplate Resource

3225 The `NetworkTemplate` is a set of configuration values for realizing a `Network`. An instance of
3226 `NetworkTemplate` may be used to create multiple `Networks`. Table 31 describes the
3227 `NetworkTemplate` attributes.

3228 **Table 31 – NetworkTemplate attributes**

Name	NetworkTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
initialState	<i>string</i>	Sets the initial state of a <code>Network</code> created using this Template. The allowed values are restricted to the non-transient states specified for the state attribute of the <code>Network</code> Resource, described in Table 30. Providers should advertise the list of available values via the <code>Network ResourceMetadata initialStates Capability</code> .
segments	<i>Protocol Segment[]</i>	A list of references to existing <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resources to be inserted into the "segments" collection of the <code>Network</code> Resource created using this Template.
segmentTemplates	<i>Protocol Segment Template[]</i>	A list of references to <code>ProtocolSegmentTemplates</code> , from each of which a <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resource is created and its reference inserted into the "segments" collection of the <code>Network</code> Resource created using this <code>NetworkTemplate</code> .
services	<i>Network Service[]</i>	A list of references to <code>NetworkService</code> Resources to be added to the "services" collection of the <code>Network</code> Resource created using this Template.
serviceTemplates	<i>Network Service Template[]</i>	A list of references to <code>NetworkServiceTemplates</code> , from each of which a <code>NetworkService</code> Resource is created and its reference inserted into the "services" collection of the <code>Network</code> Resource created using this Template.

Name	NetworkTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
subnetworks	<i>Network[]</i>	A list of references to <i>Network</i> Resources to be added to the <i>subnetworks</i> collection of the <i>Network</i> created from this <i>NetworkTemplate</i>
subnetworkTemplates	<i>NetworkTemplate[]</i>	A list of references to <i>NetworkTemplates</i> , from each of which a <i>Network</i> Resource is created and added to the <i>subnetworks</i> collection of the <i>Network</i> created using this <i>NetworkTemplate</i> .
meterTemplates	<i>MeterTemplate[]</i>	A list of references to <i>MeterTemplates</i> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <i>Meters</i> to the new <i>Network</i> . Note that the attributes of the <i>MeterTemplate</i> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <i>MeterTemplate</i> Resource.
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <i>EventLogTemplate</i> that shall be used to create and connect a new <i>EventLog</i> to the new <i>Network</i> . Note that the attributes of the <i>EventLogTemplate</i> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <i>EventLogTemplate</i> Resource.

3229 When implementing or using *NetworkTemplate*, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax
 3230 and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 31 as well as in the tables describing embedded
 3231 Resources or related *CollectionsOperations*

3232 The *NetworkTemplate* Resource supports the Read, Update and Delete operations. Create is
 3233 supported through the *NetworkTemplateCollection* Resource.

3234 5.16.4 NetworkTemplateCollection Resource

3235 A *NetworkTemplateCollection* Resource represents the Collection of *NetworkTemplates*
 3236 within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3237 5.16.4.1 Operations

3238 The *NetworkTemplateCollection* Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation
 3239 of new *NetworkTemplate* Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI
 3240 as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3241 5.16.5 Segments

3242 A Segment is an individual channel within a *Network* that utilizes a single communication protocol.
 3243 Segments are *ProtocolSegment* Resources, the attributes of which are described in Table 32.

3244

Table 32 – ProtocolSegment attributes

Name		
ProtocolSegment		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ProtocolSegment		
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The operational state of the Segment. Allowed values are: CREATING : The Segment is in the process of being created. STARTED : The Segment is available (enabled) and ready for use. STOPPED : The Segment is stopped (disabled) and not available for use. DELETING : The Segment is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the Segment. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.16.5.3. Clause 5.16.6.1 defines the initial state of a Segment.
protocol	<i>string</i>	The official name of the protocol supported by this segment. Allowed values are: Ethernet : As defined by IEEE 802.3 . IPv4 : Internet Protocol version 4, as defined in RFC 791 . IPv6 : Internet Protocol Version 6 as defined in RFC 2460 .
noDefault Routing	<i>boolean</i>	If set to TRUE the default communication between Endpoints within the Segment is disabled. Communication between Endpoints in this case must be performed by a Service. The default value is FALSE which enables communication between endpoints.
endpoints	<i>collection [Protocol Endpoint]</i>	A reference to a list of references to Endpoints associated with this Segment.
parameters	<i>map</i>	A polymorphic attribute the contents of which depend on the specific network protocol. As examples this would include "netmask" for IPv4 and "bandwidth" for "Ethernet". See the adjacent tables for details of the data to be included
meters	<i>collection [Meter]</i>	A reference to the list of Meters monitored for this Segment.
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the EventLog of this Segment.

3245 **5.16.5.1** When implementing or using ProtocolSegment Resources, Providers and Consumers shall
 3246 adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 32 as well as in the
 3247 tables describing embedded Resources or related Collections. **Protocol specific parameters**

3248 Each Segment may require additional data that is specific to a communication protocol. This additional
 3249 data is specified using the parameters attribute of the ProtocolSegment. This specification defines
 3250 the following key – value pairs that must be supplied for the indicated protocols:

3251

Table 33 - IPv6 ProtocolSegment parameters

Name		
IPv6ProtocolParameters		
Key	Value Type	Description
prefixLength	<i>integer</i>	The length of the prefix for IPv6 addresses that is used to specify a subnet.
subnetAddress	<i>string</i>	The IPv6 subnet address for this subnet.

3252

Table 34 – IPv4 ProtocolSegment parameters

Name	IPv4ProtocolParameters	
Key	Value Type	Description
netmask	<i>string</i>	The IPv4 subnetwork mask that defines the subnet.
subnetAddress	<i>string</i>	The IPv4 subnet address for this subnet.

3253

Table 35 – Ethernet ProtocolSegment parameters

Name	EthernetProtocolParameters	
Key	Value Type	Description
speed	<i>integer</i>	The current bandwidth of the Segment in Bits per second. If no accurate determination of speed is possible this attribute should contain the nominal bandwidth.
mtu	<i>integer</i>	The active or negotiated maximum transmission unit (MTU) that can be supported by this Segment.

3254 Note that Providers may support additional key – value pairs for the `parameter` attribute to extend the
 3255 existing protocols. Consumers are not required to process any additional key – value pairs but must
 3256 retransmit them to the Provider in the serialization of `ProtocolSegments`.

3257 5.16.5.2 Collections

3258 The following clauses describe the Collection Resources that are components of `ProtocolSegments`.

3259 5.16.5.2.1 endpoints Collection

3260 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is a “`ProtocolEndpoint`” as defined in clause
 3261 5.16.9. There is no accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic
 3262 `ProtocolEndpointCollection` Resource, serialized as described in 5.16.10.

3263 5.16.5.2.2 meters Collection

3264 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “`Meter`” as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3265 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `Meter` Collection (serialized as
 3266 described in 5.5.12).

3267 5.16.5.3 Operations

3268 The `ProtocolSegment` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is
 3269 supported through the `ProtocolSegmentCollection` Resource.

3270 Deleting a `ProtocolSegment` shall remove that Segment from the global (Cloud Entry Point)
 3271 `ProtocolSegmentCollection` and also all references to the Segment in Collections of other
 3272 Resources (e.g. from corresponding `Network segments` Collection).

3273 The following custom operations are also defined:

3274 start

3275 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start`

3276 This operation shall start a `ProtocolSegment`.

3277 Input parameters: None.

3278 Output parameters: None.

3279 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `ProtocolSegment` shall be in the "STARTED"
3280 state.

3281 HTTP protocol

3282 To start a `ProtocolSegment`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start" URI
3283 of the `ProtocolSegment` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3284 **JSON media type:** application/json

3285 JSON serialization:

```
3286 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3287   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start",
3288   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3289   ...
3290 }
```

3291 **XML media type:** application/xml

3292 XML serialization

```
3293 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3294   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start </action>
3295   <properties>
3296     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3297   </properties> ?
3298   <xs:any>*
3299 </Action>
```

3300 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3301 stop

3302 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop`

3303 This operation shall stop a `ProtocolSegment`.

3304 Input parameters: None.

3305 Output parameters: None.

3306 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `ProtocolSegment` shall be in the "STOPPED"
3307 state.

3308 HTTP protocol

3309 To stop a `ProtocolSegment`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI
 3310 of the `ProtocolSegment` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3311 **JSON media type:** application/json

3312 **JSON serialization:**

```
3313 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3314   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
3315   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3316   ...
3317 }
```

3318 **XML media type:** application/xml

3319 **XML serialization**

```
3320 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3321   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
3322   <properties>
3323     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3324   </properties> ?
3325   <xs:any>*
3326 </Action>
```

3327 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3328 5.16.6 ProtocolSegmentCollection Resource

3329 A `ProtocolSegmentCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `ProtocolSegments`
 3330 within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3331 5.16.6.1 Operations

3332 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` be used (see clause 5.16.7).

3333 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the
 3334 `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` "initialState" attribute, the state of the new `ProtocolSegment` shall
 3335 be the value of the `DefaultInitialState` capability of the `ProtocolSegment` Resource's
 3336 `ResourceMetadata`, if defined. If no `DefaultInitialState` capability is defined, the default value shall be
 3337 "STOPPED." The semantics of "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate
 3338 actions against the new `ProtocolSegment` to move it into that state.

3339 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new `ProtocolSegment` to the appropriate
 3340 "initialState" (either as specified by the `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` or as implied by the previous
 3341 stated rules), the `ProtocolSegment` creation shall fail.

3342 5.16.7 ProtocolSegmentTemplate Resource

3343 The `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` is a set of configuration values for realizing a
 3344 `ProtocolSegment`. A `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` may be used to create multiple
 3345 `ProtocolSegments`. Table 36 describes the `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` attributes.

3346

Table 36 – ProtocolSegmentTemplate attributes

ProtocolSegmentTemplate		
Name	ProtocolSegmentTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ProtocolSegmentTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
network	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the Network to which the Segment created using this Template belongs. If this Template is used to create a new Segment through the global (Cloud Entry Point) <code>ProtocolSegmentCollection</code> , this attribute shall be present. If this Template is referenced from a <code>NetworkTemplate</code> and used to create a new Segment during the creation of a Network, this attribute shall either be absent or have the same value as the "id" attribute of the Network to which this Segment is being added.
initialState	<i>string</i>	Sets the initial state of the Segment created using this Template. The allowed values are restricted to the non-transient states specified for the <code>state</code> attribute of the <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resource, described in 5.16.5. Providers should advertise the list of available values via the <code>ProtocolSegment</code> ResourceMetadata <code>initialStates</code> Capability.
protocol	<i>string</i>	Sets the protocol supported by the Segment created using this Template. The allowed values are those specified for the <code>protocol</code> attribute of the <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resource, described in clause 5.16.5.
noDefault Routing	<i>boolean</i>	Enables or disables default routing for the Segment created using this Template. Values are as described for the <code>noDefaultRouting</code> attribute of the <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resource, described in clause 5.16.5.
endpoints	<i>Protocol Endpoint[]</i>	A list of references to <code>ProtocolEndpoints</code> to be inserted into the <code>endpoints</code> Collection of the Segment created using this Template.
endpoint Templates	<i>Protocol Endpoint Template[]</i>	A list of references to <code>ProtocolEndpointTemplates</code> that specify a set of Endpoints to be created and inserted into the <code>endpoints</code> Collection for the Segment created using this Template. Note that the Template attributes may be explicitly listed rather than providing a reference to an existing <code>ProtocolEndpointTemplate</code> Resource.
parameters	<i>map</i>	A polymorphic attribute the contents of which depend on the specific protocol supported. The allowed key – value pairs are as specified in section 5.16.5.1.
meterTemplates	<i>meterTemplates []</i>	A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new Meters to the new <code>ProtocolSegment</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>ProtocolSegment</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.

3347 When implementing or using `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` Resources, Providers and Consumers
 3348 shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 36 as well as in the tables
 3349 describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

3350 5.16.7.1 Collections

3351 The `ProtocolSegmentTemplate.Resource` has no attributes of type Collection.

3352 5.16.7.2 Operations

3353 The `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
 3354 Create is supported through the `ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection` Resource.

3355 5.16.8 ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection Resource

3356 A `ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3357 `ProtocolSegmentTemplates` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause
 3358 5.5.12.

3359 5.16.8.1 Operations

3360 The `ProtocolSegmentTemplateCollection` Resource supports the Read and Update
 3361 operations. Creation of new `ProtocolSegmentTemplate` Resources is supported by the way of a
 3362 POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3363 5.16.9 Endpoints

3364 An Endpoint is an addressable element within a protocol that is a source, destination , or source and
 3365 destination for communication. Endpoints are `ProtocolEndpoint` Resources, the attributes of which
 3366 are described in Table 37.

3367 **Table 37 – ProtocolEndpoint attributes**

Name	ProtocolSegment	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ProtocolEndpoint	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The operational state of the Endpoint. Allowable values are: CREATING : The Endpoint is in the process of being created. ENABLED : The Endpoint is available and ready for use. DISABLED : The Endpoint is not available for use. DELETING : The Endpoint is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the Endpoint. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.16.9.3. Clause 5.16.10.1 defines the initial state of an Endpoint.
protocol	<i>string</i>	The official name of the protocol supported by this segment. This attribute is intended as a convenience only and if specified its value must be identical to the value of the <code>protocol</code> attribute of the Segment with which the Endpoint is associated. Possible values are those specified in the <code>ProtocolSegment</code> Resource described in section 5.16.5.
address	<i>string</i>	The address assigned to this Endpoint in the format required by the supported protocol.

origin	<i>string</i>	A string representing how protocol specific data is assigned to this Endpoint. Allowable values are: [STATIC DYNAMIC] In general the Consumer is responsible for assignment of static data, usually from within the guest software. The Provider may assign data dynamically when the end point is created, or it may be assigned via a Service associated with the Segment to which the Endpoint belongs. (E.g. DHCP).
interface	<i>Network Interface</i>	A reference to the Interface that is used to connect to the Network using this Endpoint.
parameters	<i>map</i>	A polymorphic attribute the contents of which depend on the specific network protocol. As examples this would include "netmask" for IPv4 and "bandwidth" for "Ethernet". See the adjacent tables for details of the data to be included
meters	<i>collection [Meter]</i>	A reference to the list of <code>Meters</code> monitored for this Endpoint.
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this Endpoint.

3368 When implementing or using `ProtocolEndpoint`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the
 3369 syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 37 as well as in the tables describing
 3370 embedded Resources or related Collections.

3371 5.16.9.1 Protocol specific parameters

3372 Each Endpoint may require additional data that is specific to the communication protocol supported. This
 3373 additional data is specified using the `parameters` attribute of a `ProtocolEndpoint`. This
 3374 specification defines the following key – value pairs that provide supplemental information for Endpoints
 3375 of specific protocol types:

3376 **Table 38 - IPv6 ProtocolEndpoint parameters**

Name		
IPv6ProtocolEndpointParameters		
Key	Value Type	Description
addressType	<i>string</i>	The IPv6 address type as specified by RFC4291 , Section 2.4. Allowed values: [Unspecified Loopback Multicast Link Local Unicast Global Unicast Embedded IPv4 Address Site Local Unicast] If specified this value must match the type of address specified by the <code>address</code> attribute of the IPv6 Endpoint with which it is associated.
prefixLength	<i>integer</i>	The length of the prefix for IPv6 addresses that is used to specify a subnet.

3377 **Table 39 – IPv4 ProtocolEndpoint parameters**

Name		
IPv4ProtocolEndpointParameters		
Key	Value Type	Description
hostname	<i>string</i>	The DNS resolvable name associated with this address.

3378

Table 40 – Ethernet ProtocolEndpoint parameters

Name	EthernetProtocolEndpointParameters	
Key	Value Type	Description
aliases	<i>string[]</i>	Other unicast addresses that may be used to communicate with the Endpoint
groupAddresses	<i>string[]</i>	Multicast addresses to which the Endpoint listens.

3379 Note that Providers may support additional key – value pairs for the `parameter` attribute to extend the
 3380 existing protocols. Consumers are not required to process any additional key – value pairs but must
 3381 retransmit them to the Provider in the serialization of `ProtocolEndpoints`.

3382 5.16.9.2 Collections

3383 The following clauses describe the Collection Resources that are components of
 3384 `ProtocolEndpoints`.

3385 5.16.9.2.1 meters Collection

3386 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “Meter” as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3387 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `Meter` Collection (serialized as
 3388 described in 5.5.12).

3389 5.16.9.3 Operations

3390 The `ProtocolEndpoints` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is
 3391 supported through the `ProtocolEndpointCollection` Resource.

3392 Deleting a `ProtocolEndpoint` shall remove that Endpoint from the global (Cloud Entry Point)
 3393 `ProtocolEndpointCollection`. Additionally, references to the Endpoint in
 3394 `ProtocolEndpointCollections` of all other Resources (e.g. `ProtocolSegments`,
 3395 `NetworkServices`) must be removed.

3396 The following custom operations are also defined:

3397 enable

3398 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable`

3399 This operation shall enable a `ProtocolEndpoint`.

3400 Input parameters: None.

3401 Output parameters: None.

3402 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `ProtocolEndpoint` shall be in the "ENABLED"
 3403 state.

3404 HTTP protocol

3405 To enable a `ProtocolEndpoint`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable"
 3406 URI of the `ProtocolEndpoint` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3407 **JSON media type:** application/json

3408 **JSON serialization:**

```
3409 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3410   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable",
3411   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3412   ...
3413 }
```

3414 **XML media type:** application/xml

3415 **XML serialization**

```
3416 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3417   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable </action>
3418   <properties>
3419     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3420   </properties> ?
3421   <xs:any>*
3422 </Action>
```

3423 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3424 **disable**

3425 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable

3426 This operation shall disable a `ProtocolEndpoint`.

3427 Input parameters: None.

3428 Output parameters: None.

3429 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `ProtocolEndpoint` shall be in the "DISABLED"
3430 state.

3431 **HTTP protocol**

3432 To stop a `ProtocolEndpoint`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable"
3433 URI of the `ProtocolEndpoint` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3434 **JSON media type:** application/json

3435 **JSON serialization:**

```
3436 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3437   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable",
3438   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3439   ...
3440 }
```

3441 **XML media type:** application/xml

3442 **XML serialization**

```
3443 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3444   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable </action>
3445   <properties>
3446     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3447   </properties> ?
3448   <xs:any>*
3449 </Action>
```

3450 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3451 **5.16.10 ProtocolEndpointCollection Resource**

3452 A ProtocolEndpointCollection Resource represents the Collection of ProtocolEndpoints
3453 within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3454 **5.16.10.1 Operations**

3455 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a ProtocolEndpointTemplate be used (see clause 5.16.11).

3456 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the
3457 ProtocolEndpointTemplate "initialState" attribute, the state of the new ProtocolEndpoint
3458 shall be the value of the DefaultInitialState capability of the ProtocolEndpoint Resource's
3459 ResourceMetadata, if defined. If no DefaultInitialState capability is defined, the default value shall be
3460 "DISABLED." The semantics of "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate
3461 actions against the new ProtocolEndpoint to move it into that state.

3462 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new ProtocolEndpoint to the appropriate
3463 "initialState" (either as specified by the ProtocolEndpointTemplate or as implied by the previous
3464 stated rules), the ProtocolEndpoint creation shall fail.

3465 **5.16.11 ProtocolEndpointTemplate Resource**

3466 The ProtocolEndpointTemplate is a set of configuration values for realizing a
3467 ProtocolEndpoint. A ProtocolEndpointTemplate may be used to create multiple
3468 ProtocolEndpoints. Table 41 describes the ProtocolEndpointTemplate attributes.

3469 **Table 41 – ProtocolEndpointTemplate attributes**

Name		
ProtocolEndpointTemplate		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ProtocolEndpointTemplate		
Attribute	Type	Description
initialState	string	Sets the initial state of the Endpoint created using this Template. The allowed values are restricted to the non-transient states specified for the state attribute of the ProtocolEndpoint Resource, described in clause 5.16.9. Providers should advertise the list of available values via the ProtocolEndpoint ResourceMetadata initialStates Capability.

Name	ProtocolEndpointTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/ProtocolEndpointTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
address	<i>string</i>	If the <code>origin</code> attribute value is "STATIC" this attribute contains the address to be assigned to this Endpoint in the format required by the supported protocol. If the <code>origin</code> attribute value is "DYNAMIC" this attribute must not be supplied by the Template.
origin	<i>string</i>	A string representing how protocol specific data is assigned to this Endpoint. Allowable values are: [STATIC DYNAMIC] If the value of this attribute is "STATIC" then all protocol specific data for this Endpoint must be supplied by this Template. If the value of this attribute is "DYNAMIC" then the protocol specific data for this Endpoint is allocated by other mechanisms and must not be supplied by this Template.
interface	<i>Network Interface</i>	A reference to a <code>NetworkInterface</code> Resource with which this new Endpoint is associated.
parameters	<i>map</i>	A polymorphic attribute the contents of which depend on the specific protocol supported. The allowed key – value pairs are as specified in clause 5.16.9. Whether this data is required to be supplied by this Template is determined by the value of the "origin" attribute described above.
meterTemplates	<i>MeterTemplate[]</i>	A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <code>Meters</code> to the new <code>ProtocolEndpoint</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>ProtocolEndpoint</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.

3470 When implementing or using `ProtocolEndpointTemplate` Resources, Providers and Consumers
3471 shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 41 as well as in the tables
3472 describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

3473 5.16.11.1 Collections

3474 The `ProtocolEndpointTemplate` Resource has no attributes of type Collection.

3475 5.16.11.2 Operations

3476 The `ProtocolEndpointTemplate` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
3477 Create is supported through the `ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection` Resource.

3478 5.16.12 ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection Resource

3479 A `ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
3480 `ProtocolEndpointTemplates` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in
3481 clause 5.5.12.

3482 **5.16.12.1 Operations**

3483 The `ProtocolEndpointTemplateCollection` Resource supports the Read and Update
 3484 operations. Creation of new `ProtocolEndpointTemplate` Resources is supported by the way of a
 3485 POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3486 **5.16.13 Interfaces**

3487 An Interface provides a connection to a Network by associating Endpoints with Machines. The model is
 3488 basically that of a virtual Network Interface Card (vNIC) that can support multiple communication
 3489 protocols at multiple levels. Interfaces are `NetworkInterface` Resources, the attributes of which are
 3490 described in Table 42.

3491 **Table 42 – NetworkInterface attributes**

Name		
NetworkInterface		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkInterface		
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The operational state of the Interface. Allowable values are: CREATING : The Interface is in the process of being created. ENABLED : The Interface is available and ready for use. DISABLED : The Interface is not available for use. DELETING : The Interface is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the Interface. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.16.13.2. Clause 5.16.14.1 defines the initial state of a Interface.
endpoints	<i>collection [Protocol Endpoint]</i>	A reference to a list of references to <code>ProtocolEndpoints</code> this Interface supports. Note: This Collection represents an association between the Interface and a list of Endpoints in one or more Segments.
speed	<i>integer</i>	The current bandwidth of the Interface in Bits per Second. For Interfaces that vary in bandwidth or for those where no accurate estimation can be made, this attribute should contain the nominal bandwidth..
mtu	<i>integer</i>	The size in bytes of the active or negotiated maximum transmission unit (MTU) that can be supported by this Interface.
meters	<i>collection [Meter]</i>	A reference to the list of <code>Meters</code> monitored for this Interface.
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this Interface.

3492 When implementing or using `NetworkInterface`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the
 3493 syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 42 as well as in the tables describing
 3494 embedded Resources or related Collections.

3495 **5.16.13.1 Collections**

3496 The following clauses describe the Collection Resources that are components of
 3497 `NetworkInterfaces`.

3498 **5.16.13.1.1 meters Collection**

3499 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Meter" as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3500 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `Meter` Collection (serialized as
 3501 described in 5.5.12).

3502 5.16.13.2 Operations

3503 The `NetworkInterfaces` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is
3504 supported through the `NetworkInterfaceCollection` Resource.

3505 Deleting a `NetworkInterface` shall remove that Endpoint from the global (Cloud Entry Point)
3506 `NetworkInterfaceCollection`. Additionally, references to the Endpoint in
3507 `NetworkInterfaceCollections` of all other Resources (e.g. `ProtocolEndpoints`,
3508 `NetworkServices`) must be removed.

3509 The following custom operations are also defined:

3510 **enable**

3511 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable`

3512 This operation shall enable a `NetworkInterface`.

3513 Input parameters: None.

3514 Output parameters: None.

3515 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `NetworkInterface` shall be in the "ENABLED"
3516 state.

3517 **HTTP protocol**

3518 To enable a `NetworkInterface`, a POST is sent to the "`http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable`"
3519 URI of the `NetworkInterface` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3520 **JSON media type:** `application/json`

3521 **JSON serialization:**

```
3522 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3523   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable",
3524   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3525   ...
3526 }
```

3527 **XML media type:** `application/xml`

3528 **XML serialization**

```
3529 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3530   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/enable </action>
3531   <properties>
3532     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3533   </properties> ?
3534   <xs:any>*
3535 </Action>
```

3536 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3537 **disable**

3538 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable`

3539 This operation shall disable a `NetworkInterface`.

3540 Input parameters: None.

3541 Output parameters: None.

3542 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `NetworkInterface` shall be in the "DISABLED"
3543 state.

3544 HTTP protocol

3545 To stop a `NetworkInterface`, a POST is sent to the "`http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable`"
3546 URI of the `NetworkInterface` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3547 **JSON media type:** `application/json`

3548 JSON serialization:

```
3549 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3550   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable",
3551   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3552   ...
3553 }
```

3554 **XML media type:** `application/xml`

3555 XML serialization

```
3556 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3557   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/disable </action>
3558   <properties>
3559     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3560   </properties> ?
3561   <xs:any>*
3562 </Action>
```

3563 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3564 5.16.14 NetworkInterfaceCollection Resource

3565 A `NetworkInterfaceCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `NetworkInterfaces`
3566 within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12

3567 5.16.14.1 Operations

3568 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` be used (see clause 5.16.15).

3569 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the
3570 `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` "initialState" attribute, the state of the new `NetworkInterface`
3571 shall be the value of the `DefaultInitialState` capability of the `NetworkInterface` Resource's
3572 `ResourceMetadata`, if defined. If no `DefaultInitialState` capability is defined, the default value shall be
3573 "DISABLED." The semantics of "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate
3574 actions against the new `NetworkInterface` to move it into that state.

3575 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new `NetworkInterface` to the appropriate
 3576 "initialState" (either as specified by the `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` or as implied by the previous
 3577 stated rules), the `NetworkInterface` creation shall fail.

3578 5.16.15 NetworkInterfaceTemplate Resource

3579 The `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` is a set of configuration values for realizing a
 3580 `NetworkInterface`. A `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` may be used to create multiple
 3581 `NetworkInterfaces`. Table 43 describes the `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` attributes.

3582 **Table 43 – NetworkInterfaceTemplate attributes**

Name	NetworkInterfaceTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkInterfaceTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
initialState	<i>string</i>	Sets the initial state of the Endpoint created using this Template. The allowed values are restricted to the non-transient states specified for the state attribute of the <code>NetworkInterface</code> Resource, described in 5.16.13 . Providers should advertise the list of available values via the <code>NetworkInterface</code> ResourceMetadata initialStates Capability.
endpoints	<i>collection [Protocol Endpoint]</i>	A reference to a list of references to <code>ProtocolEndpoints</code> this Interface supports. Note: This Collection represents an association between the Interface and a list of Endpoints in one or more Segments.
speed	<i>integer</i>	The initial bandwidth of the Interface in Bits per Second.
mtu	<i>integer</i>	The size in bytes of the initial maximum transmission unit (MTU) that can be supported by this Interface.
meterTemplates	<i>meterTemplates []</i>	A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <code>Meters</code> to the new <code>NetworkInterface</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>NetworkInterface</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.

3583 When implementing or using `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` Resources, Providers and Consumers
 3584 shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in **Table 43** as well as in the tables
 3585 describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

3586 5.16.15.1 Collections

3587 The following clauses describe Collection Resources that are components of
 3588 `NetworkInterfaceTemplates`.

3589 5.16.15.1.1 endpoints Collection

3590 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "ProtocolEndpoint" as defined in clause
 3591 5.16.9. There is no accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic
 3592 `ProtocolEndpointCollection` (serialized as described in 5.16.10).

3593 5.16.15.2 Operations

3594 The `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
 3595 Create is supported through the `NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection` Resource.

3596 5.16.16 NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection Resource

3597 A `NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3598 `NetworkInterfaceTemplates` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in
 3599 clause 5.5.12.

3600 5.16.16.1 Operations

3601 The `NetworkInterfaceTemplateCollection` Resource supports the Read and Update
 3602 operations. Creation of new `NetworkInterfaceTemplate` Resources is supported by the way of a
 3603 POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3604 5.16.17 Services

3605 Services provide all additional functionality within Networks beyond basic routing within a single
 3606 Segment. Services can be applied to individual Segments or Endpoints, collections of Segments or
 3607 Endpoints, or combinations of these elements. The actual function provide by a Service is determined by
 3608 policies (see clause 5.16.21). Services are `NetworkService` Resources, the attributes of which are
 3609 described in Table 44.

3610 **Table 44 – NetworkService attributes**

Name	NetworkService	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkService	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The operational state of the Service. Allowed values are: CREATING : The Service is in the process of being created. STARTED : The Service is available (enabled) and ready for use. STOPPED : The Service is stopped (disabled) and not available for use. DELETING : The Service is in the process of being deleted. ERROR : The Provider has detected an error in the Service. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.17. Clause 5.16.18.1 defines the initial state of a Service.
type	<i>string</i>	Indicates the type of service provided by this <code>NetworkService</code> . Allowed values: [Load Balancer QoS Firewall VPN DHCP DNS NAT Gateway Layer4 Port Forwarding IP Routing Virtual Network Device Other]
endpoints	<i>collection</i> [Protocol Endpoint]	A reference to a list of references to individual Endpoints to which the Service is provided.
segments	<i>collection</i> [Protocol Segment]	A reference to a list of references to complete Segments to which the service is provided. The Service is provided to all Endpoints within each Segment.
policies	<i>map</i>	*** TBD *** Format & requirements yet to be determined form NSMWG work
meters	<i>collection</i> [Meter]	A reference to the list of <code>Meters</code> monitored for this Service.
eventLog	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>EventLog</code> of this Service.

3611 When implementing or using `NetworkService` Resources, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to
 3612 the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in **Table 44** as well as in the tables describing
 3613 embedded Resources or related Collections.

3614 **5.16.17.1 Collections**

3615 The following clauses describe the Collection Resources that are components of `NetworkServices`.

3616 **5.16.17.1.1 endpoints Collection**

3617 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is a “`ProtocolEndpoint`” as defined in clause
 3618 5.16.9. There is no accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic
 3619 `ProtocolEndpointCollection` Resource, serialized as described in 5.16.10.

3620 **5.16.17.1.2 segments Collection**

3621 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is a “`ProtocolSegment`” as defined in clause
 3622 5.16.55.16.9. There is no accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic
 3623 `ProtocolSegmentCollection` Resource, serialized as described in 5.16.6.

3624 **5.16.17.1.3 meters Collection**

3625 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is “`Meter`” as defined in clause 5.17.3. There is no
 3626 accessory attribute for the items in this Collection, therefore it is a basic `Meter` Collection (serialized as
 3627 described in 5.5.12).

3628 **5.16.17.2 Operations**

3629 The `NetworkService` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is
 3630 supported through the `NetworkServiceCollection` Resource.

3631 Deleting a `NetworkService` shall remove that Service from the global (Cloud Entry Point)
 3632 `NetworkServiceCollection` and also all references to the Service in Collections of other
 3633 Resources (e.g. from corresponding `Network services` Collections).

3634 The following custom operations are also defined:

3635 **start**

3636 **/link@rel:** `http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start`

3637 This operation shall start a `NetworkService`.

3638 Input parameters: None.

3639 Output parameters: None.

3640 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `NetworkService` shall be in the "STARTED" state.

3641 **HTTP protocol**

3642 To start a `NetworkService`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start" URI of
 3643 the `NetworkService` where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3644 **JSON media type:** application/json

3645 **JSON serialization:**

```
3646 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3647   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start",
3648   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3649   ...
3650 }
```

3651 **XML media type:** application/xml

3652 **XML serialization**

```
3653 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3654   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start </action>
3655   <properties>
3656     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3657   </properties> ?
3658   <xs:any>*
3659 </Action>
```

3660 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3661 **stop**

3662 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop

3663 This operation shall stop a NetworkService.

3664 Input parameters: None.

3665 Output parameters: None.

3666 Upon successful completion of this operation, the NetworkService shall be in the "STOPPED" state.

3667 **HTTP protocol**

3668 To stop a NetworkService, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI of
3669 the NetworkService where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3670 **JSON media type:** application/json

3671 **JSON serialization:**

```
3672 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3673   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
3674   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3675   ...
3676 }
```

3677 **XML media type:** application/xml

3678 **XML serialization**

```
3679 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
```

```

3680 <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
3681 <properties>
3682   <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3683 </properties> ?
3684 <xs:any>*
3685 </Action>

```

Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

5.16.18 NetworkServiceCollection Resource

A `NetworkServiceCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `NetworkServices` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12. This Resource shall be serialized as follows:

JSON serialization:

```

3692 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkServiceCollection",
3693   "id": string,
3694   "count": number,
3695   "services": [
3696     { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkService",
3697       "id": string,
3698       ... remaining NetworkService attributes ...
3699     }, +
3700   ], ?
3701   "operations": [ { "rel": "add", "href": string } ? ]
3702   ...
3703 }

```

XML serialization:

```

3705 <Collection
3706 resourceURI="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkServiceCollection"
3707   xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3708   <id> xs:anyURI </id>
3709   <count> xs:integer </count>
3710   <services>
3711     <NetworkService>
3712       <id> xs:anyURI </id>
3713       ... remaining NetworkService attributes ...
3714     </NetworkService> *
3715   </services>
3716   <operations>
3717     <operation rel="add" href="xs:anyURI"/> ?
3718   </operations>

```

```

3719     <xs:any>*
3720   </Collection>

```

3721 5.16.18.1 Operations

3722 NOTE The "add" operation requires that a `NetworkServiceTemplate` be used (see clause 5.16.19).

3723 Upon successful processing of the "add" operation, unless otherwise specified by the
 3724 `NetworkServiceTemplate` "initialState" attribute, the state of the new `NetworkService` shall be
 3725 the value of the `DefaultInitialState` capability of the `NetworkService` Resource's
 3726 `ResourceMetadata`, if defined. If no `DefaultInitialState` capability is defined, the default value shall be
 3727 "STOPPED." The semantics of "initialState" shall be equivalent to the Provider issuing the appropriate
 3728 actions against the new `NetworkService` to move it into that state.

3729 If a Provider is unable to change the state of the new `NetworkService` to the appropriate "initialState"
 3730 (either as specified by the `NetworkServiceTemplate` or as implied by the previous stated rules),
 3731 the `NetworkService` creation shall fail.

3732 5.16.19 NetworkServiceTemplate Resource

3733 The `NetworkServiceTemplate` is a set of configuration values for realizing a `NetworkService`.
 3734 A `NetworkServiceTemplate` may be used to create multiple `NetworkServices`. Table 45
 3735 describes the `NetworkServiceTemplate` attributes.

3736 Table 45 – NetworkServiceTemplate attributes

Name	NetworkServiceTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkServiceTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
network	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the Network to which the Service created using this Template belongs. If this Template is used to create a new Service through the global (Cloud Entry Point) <code>NetworkServiceCollection</code> , this attribute shall be present. If this Template is referenced from a <code>NetworkTemplate</code> and used to create a new Service during the creation of a Network, this attribute shall either be absent or have the same value as the "id" attribute of the Network to which this Service is being added.
initialState	<i>string</i>	Sets the initial state of the Service created using this Template. The allowed values are restricted to the non-transient states specified for the <code>state</code> attribute of the <code>NetworkService</code> Resource, described in clause 5.16.17. Providers should advertise the list of available values via the <code>NetworkService</code> ResourceMetadata <code>initialStates</code> Capability.
type	<i>string</i>	Sets the protocol supported by the Service created using this Template. The allowed values are those specified for the <code>protocol</code> attribute of the <code>NetworkService</code> Resource, described in 5.16.17
endpoints	<i>ProtocolEndpoint[]</i>	A list of references to <code>ProtocolEndpoints</code> to be inserted into the <code>endpoints</code> Collection of the Service created using this Template.
segments	<i>ProtocolSegment[]</i>	A list of references to <code>ProtocolSegments</code> to be inserted into the <code>segments</code> Collection of the Service created using this Template.

Name	NetworkServiceTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/NetworkServiceTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
policies	<i>map</i>	*** TBD *** Format & requirements yet to be determined form NSMWG work
meterTemplates	<i>meterTemplates []</i>	A list of references to <code>MeterTemplates</code> that shall be used to create and connect a set of new <code>Meters</code> to the new <code>NetworkService</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterTemplate</code> Resource.
eventLogTemplate	<i>ref</i>	A reference to an <code>EventLogTemplate</code> that shall be used to create and connect a new <code>EventLog</code> to the new <code>NetworkService</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>EventLogTemplate</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>EventLogTemplate</code> Resource.

3737 When implementing or using `NetworkServiceTemplate` Resources, Providers and Consumers
 3738 shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 45 as well as in the tables
 3739 describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

3740 5.16.19.1 Collections

3741 The `NetworkServiceTemplate.Resource` has no attributes of type Collection.

3742 5.16.19.2 Operations

3743 The `NetworkServiceTemplate` Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.
 3744 Create is supported through the `NetworkServiceTemplateCollection` Resource.

3745 5.16.20 NetworkServiceTemplateCollection Resource

3746 A `NetworkServiceTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3747 `NetworkServiceTemplates` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause
 3748 5.5.12. Operations

3749 The `NetworkServiceTemplateCollection` Resource supports the Read and Update
 3750 operations. Creation of new `NetworkServiceTemplate` Resources is supported by the way of a
 3751 POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3752 5.16.21 Policies

3753 *** **TBD** ***

3754 **Format & requirements yet to be determined form NSMWG work***Error! Reference source not found..*

3755 5.17 Monitoring Resources and relationships

3756 5.17.1 Job Resource

3757 This Resource represents a process (i.e., a sequence of one or more operations directed to accomplish a
 3758 specific goal) that is performed by the Provider.

3759 If a Provider supports exposing `Job` Resources to Consumers, each request from a Consumer that the
 3760 Provider responds to with a 202 status code, shall result in a `Job` Resource being created and an
 3761 absolute URI reference to that `Job` Resource shall be made available to the requesting Consumer.

3762 Providers may create additional `Job` Resources for Provider-initiated operations if the Provider chooses
 3763 to expose these Jobs to Consumers.

3764 If a `Job` is not completed successfully (e.g., it is in the `FAILED` or `STOPPED` state), this specification
 3765 does not place any requirements on the Provider to ensure that the affected Resources are left in certain
 3766 states. Based on the environmental conditions at that time, the Provider might choose to "undo" any
 3767 impact of the operation; simply halt processing; attempt some kind of "cleanup" action; or choose to do
 3768 something else. However, Providers shall list all Resources impacted by the `Job` in the
 3769 "affectedResources" attribute, thus allowing Consumers an opportunity to examine the state of each
 3770 Resource themselves. In cases where a Resource has been deleted, references to that Resource shall
 3771 not appear in the "affectedResources" attribute.

3772 The `Job` Resource allows for nesting of `Jobs`. The determination of when a single operation is
 3773 converted into multiple nested `Jobs` is out of scope of this specification. However, if there are nested
 3774 Jobs, the top-most `Job` Resource shall report the overall status of all `Jobs` and shall only be in a
 3775 "SUCCESS" state if all nested `Jobs` are also in "SUCCESS" state. If nested `Jobs` are created, there is
 3776 no requirement for the top-most `Job` Resource to reference all affected Resources in its
 3777 "affectedResources" attribute. The Consumer needs to traverse the entire set of nested `Jobs` to
 3778 determine the complete list of Resources impacted by the `Jobs`.

3779 Table 46 describes the `Job` attributes.

3780 **Table 46 – Job attributes**

Name	Job	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Job	
Attribute	Type	Description
state	<i>string</i>	The state of the process associated with this operation. Allowed values are: QUEUED : Indicates that the operation has not yet begun processing. RUNNING : Indicates that the operation is still being executed. FAILED : Indicates that the operation failed to be completed successfully. SUCCESS : Indicates that the operation was successfully completed. STOPPING : Indicates that the operation is in the process of being stopped. STOPPED : Indicates that the operation was stopped before completion. The operations that result in transitions to the above defined states are defined in clause 5.17.1.1
targetResource	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the top-level Resource upon which the operation is being performed. Typically, this Resource would be the Resource on which the operation was invoked. Note that if an "add" Job is executed against a "Collection" Resource (e.g., MachineCollection), the targetResource attribute shall reference the Collection Resource as that is the Resource on which the operation was performed. Additionally, the newly created Resource shall appear in the "affectedResources" attribute.
affectedResources	<i>ref[]</i>	A list of references to Resources that have been impacted by this <code>Job</code> . Note that this list shall always contain the "targetResource" reference. Array item name: affectedResource
action	<i>URI</i>	A URI that indicates the type of action being performed.
returnCode	<i>integer</i>	The operation return code. The specific value is specific to the implementation. Values in the range of 0 to 9999 are reserved for use by this specification.
progress	<i>integer</i>	An integer value in the range 0 ... 100 that indicates the progress of this <code>Job</code> . This value shall be 100 if the <code>Job</code> is no longer executing, regardless of the outcome.

Name	Job	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Job	
Attribute	Type	Description
statusMessage	<i>string</i>	A human-readable string that provides information about the operation. It is used to further qualify or provide additional information about the current status of the operation. For example, this attribute may indicate the reason why the operation failed, or whether the operation was cancelled by the Consumer or the Provider.
timeOfStatusChange	<i>dateTime</i>	A timestamp indicating the last time that the status of the operation changed.
parentJob	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the <code>Job</code> of which this Resource is a subordinate i.e. a nested job
nestedJobs	<i>ref[]</i>	An array of references to a set of subordinate <code>Job</code> Resources. Array item name: nestedJob

3781 When implementing or using `Job`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of
 3782 its attributes as described in Table 46 as well as in the tables describing referred Resources or related
 3783 Collections.

3784 5.17.1.1 Operations Resource

3785 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Deleting a `Job` that is in the
 3786 "RUNNING" state shall be the equivalent of first stopping the `Job` and then deleting it. A request to delete
 3787 a running `Job` that does not support the "stop" action shall fail.

3788 The following custom operations are also defined:

3789 **stop**

3790 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop

3791 This operation shall stop a `Job`.

3792 Input parameters: None.

3793 Output parameters: None.

3794 During the processing of this operation, the `Job` shall be in the "STOPPING" state.

3795 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Job` shall be in the "STOPPED" state.

3796 **HTTP protocol**

3797 To stop a `Job`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI of the `Job` where
 3798 the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3799 **JSON media type:** application/json

3800 **JSON serialization:**

```
3801 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3802   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
3803   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3804   ...
3805 }
```

3806 **XML media type:** application/xml

3807 **XML serialization**

```
3808 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3809   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
3810   <properties>
3811     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3812   </properties> ?
3813   <xs:any>*
3814 </Action>
```

3815 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3816 5.17.2 JobCollection Resource

3817 A `JobCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Jobs` within a `Provider` and follows the
3818 Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3819 5.17.3 Meter Resource

3820 This Resource represents an available `Meter` of some property associated to a given Resource.

3821 If a `Meter`'s "targetResource" is deleted all `Meters` associated with that Resource shall also be
3822 deleted. In other words, deleting a Resource-specific `MetersCollection` (e.g., a `Machine`'s
3823 `MetersCollection`) shall also result in the deletion of the `Meters` referenced from that Collection.

3824 Table 47 describes the `Meter` attributes.

3825 **Table 47 – Meter attributes**

Name	Meter	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Meter	
Attribute	Type	Description
targetResource	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the Resource to which the <code>Meter</code> is related.
aspect	<i>URI</i>	A unique identifier representing the aspect of the Resource being metered.
units	<i>string</i>	The name of the used units, e.g., kilobits per second, CPU usage percentage, etc.
sampleInterval	<i>integer</i>	The time between consecutive samples in seconds.
timeScope	<i>string</i>	The time scope to which this meter's value applies. Two possible values: "Point" indicates that the <code>Meter</code> applies to a point in time. "Interval" indicates that the <code>Meter</code> applies to a time interval. For instance, it would be possible to define a <code>Meter</code> whose purpose is to provide the daily average CPU usage.
intervalDuration	<i>duration</i>	The interval duration when the <code>timeScope</code> is set to "Interval". Possible values: hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, or yearly.
isContinuous	<i>boolean</i>	This value indicates whether the <code>Meter</code> value is continuous or scalar. Performance <code>Meters</code> are an example of a linear metric.
samples	<i>collection</i> <i>[Sample]</i>	A reference to the list of taken samples

Name	Meter	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Meter	
Attribute	Type	Description
minValue	<i>string</i>	The expected minimal measure value.
maxValue	<i>string</i>	The expected maximum measure value.
stopTime	<i>dateTime</i>	The time from which the meter stops tracking samples.
expiresTime	<i>dateTime</i>	The time from which the <i>Meter</i> is not monitored anymore. It implies the deletion of the <i>Meter</i> after this time. Note that a <i>Meter</i> might be deleted before this time if the Resource being metered is deleted.

3826 5.17.3.1 Collections

3827 When implementing or using *Meter*, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics
3828 of its attributes as described in Table 47 as well as in the tables describing related Collections.

3829 The following clauses describe the Collection resources that are components of *Meters*.

3830 5.17.3.1.1 SampleCollection Resource

3831 The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Sample", defined in Table 48:

3832 **Table 48 – Sample attributes**

Name	Sample	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Sample	
Attribute	Type	Description
timestamp	<i>dateTime</i>	Indicates when the measure was taken (timeScope="Point"). If the timeScope is "Interval", it indicates the end of the time interval.
value	<i>string</i>	Indicates the sampled value of the measure.

3833 5.17.3.2 Operations

3834 When implementing or using *Sample*, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and
3835 semantics of its attributes as described in Table 48 as well as in the tables describing related Collections.

3836 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported via the
3837 *MeterCollection* Resource. The deletion of a *Meter* shall remove the *Meter* from the
3838 targetResource's "meter" attribute.

3839 The following custom operations are also defined:

3840 **start**

3841 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start

3842 This operation shall start a *Meter*.

3843 Input parameters: None.

3844 Output parameters: None.

3845 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Meter` shall start recording samples related to its
3846 associated Resource.

3847 HTTP protocol

3848 To start a `Meter`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start" URI of the `Meter`
3849 where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3850 **JSON media type:** application/json

3851 JSON serialization:

```
3852 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3853   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start",
3854   "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3855   ...
3856 }
```

3857 **XML media type:** application/xml

3858 XML serialization

```
3859 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3860   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/start </action>
3861   <properties>
3862     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3863   </properties> ?
3864   <xs:any>*
3865 </Action>
```

3866 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3867 stop

3868 **/link@rel:** http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop

3869 This operation shall stop a `Meter`.

3870 Input parameters: None.

3871 Output parameters: None.

3872 Upon successful completion of this operation, the `Meter` shall no longer be recording samples related to
3873 its associated Resource.

3874 HTTP protocol

3875 To stop a `Meter`, a POST is sent to the "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop" URI of the `Meter`
3876 where the HTTP request body shall be as described below.

3877 **JSON media type:** application/json

3878 JSON serialization:

```
3879 { "resourceURI": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Action",
3880   "action": "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop",
```

```

3881     "properties": { string: string, + } ?
3882     ...
3883 }

```

3884 **XML media type:** application/xml

3885 **XML serialization**

```

3886 <Action xmlns="http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2">
3887   <action> http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/action/stop </action>
3888   <properties>
3889     <property key="xs:string"> xs:string </property> *
3890   </properties> ?
3891   <xs:any>*
3892 </Action>

```

3893 Upon successful processing of the request, the HTTP response body may be empty.

3894 5.17.4 MeterCollection Resource

3895 A `MeterCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `Meters` within a Provider and follows the
 3896 Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3897 5.17.4.1 Operations

3898 **NOTE** The "add" operation requires that a `MeterTemplate` be used (see 4.2.1.1).

3899 If `Meters` are created through the global (Cloud Entry Point) `MeterCollection`'s "add" operation,
 3900 they shall be added automatically to the corresponding `targetResource`'s "Meters" Collection Resource
 3901 as well.

3902 5.17.5 MeterTemplate Resource

3903 A `MeterTemplate` represents the information needed to create a new `Meter`. Table 49 describes the
 3904 `MeterTemplate` attributes.

3905 **Table 49 – MeterTemplate attributes**

Name		
MeterTemplate		
Type URI		
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MeterTemplate		
Attribute	Type	Description
targetResource	ref	A reference to the Resource that is metered. The type of the Resource shall be one of the "associatedTo" types listed in the <code>MeterConfiguration</code> referenced. If this Template is used to create a new <code>Meter</code> through the global (Cloud Entry Point) <code>MetersCollection</code> , this attribute shall be present. If this Template is used to create a new <code>Meter</code> through a <code>targetResource</code> 's <code>MetersCollection</code> , this attribute shall either be absent or have the same value as the "id" of the <code>targetResource</code> to which this <code>Meter</code> is being added.
meterConfig	ref	A reference to the <code>MeterConfiguration</code> that is used to create a <code>Meter</code> from this <code>MeterTemplate</code> . Note that the attributes of the <code>MeterConfiguration</code> may be specified rather than a reference to an existing <code>MeterConfiguration</code> Resource.

3906 When implementing or using `MeterTemplate`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax
 3907 and semantics of its attributes as described in **Table 49** as well as in the tables describing referred
 3908 Resources or related Collections.

3909 5.17.6 MeterTemplateCollection Resource

3910 A `MeterTemplateCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `MeterTemplate`
 3911 Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3912 5.17.6.1 Operations

3913 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MeterTemplate` Resources
 3914 is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3915 5.17.7 MeterConfiguration Resource

3916 A `MeterConfiguration` represents the definition of a `Meter`. Table 50 describes the
 3917 `MeterConfiguration` attributes.

3918 **Table 50 – MeterConfiguration attributes**

Name	MeterConfiguration	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/MeterConfiguration	
Attribute	Type	Description
associatedResources	<i>URI[]</i>	An array of URIs that indicate the types of Resources to which a <code>Meter</code> created from this configuration can be applied. The value space of these URIs is identical to that of <code>ResourceMetadata.typeURI</code> , which is a URI that uniquely identifies a Resource type.
aspect	<i>URI</i>	A unique identifier representing the aspect of the Resource being metered. See Table 51 below for the set of CIMI-defined URIs.
units	<i>string</i>	The human-readable name of the used units, e.g., kilobits per second, CPU usage percentage, etc.
sampleInterval	<i>integer</i>	The time between consecutive samples in seconds.
timeScope	<i>string</i>	The time scope to which the <code>Meter</code> value applies. Two possible values: "Point" indicates that the <code>Meter</code> applies to a point in time. "Interval" indicates that the <code>Meter</code> applies to a time interval. For instance, it would be possible to define a <code>MeterConfiguration</code> whose purpose is to provide the daily average CPU usage.
intervalDuration	<i>duration</i>	The interval duration when the <code>timeScope</code> is set to "Interval." Possible values: hourly, daily, weekly, monthly, or yearly.
isContinuous	<i>boolean</i>	This value indicates whether the <code>Meter</code> value is continuous or scalar. Performance <code>Meters</code> are an example of a linear metric.

3919 Table 51 describes the "aspect" URIs defined by this specification. Providers may define new aspect
 3920 URIs and it is recommended that these URIs be dereferencable such that Consumers can discover the
 3921 details of the new aspect. For brevity the "URI" column in the table only shows the last part of the URI. It
 3922 should be appended to: "http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/aspect/".

3923

Table 51 – aspect URIs

Aspect	Description
cpu	The percentage CPU usage of the Resource. Typically associated with <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> , <code>System</code> , and <code>Machine</code> Resources. For Resources that group other Resources (e.g., <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> or <code>System</code> Resources), this aspect provides the aggregated percentage usage of the CPU.
memory	The amount of memory being used by the Resource. Typically associated with <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> , <code>System</code> , and <code>Machine</code> Resources. For Resources that group other Resources (e.g., <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> or <code>System</code> Resources), this aspect provides the aggregated usage of the memory.
disk	The amount of disk being used by the Resource. Typically associated with <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> , <code>System</code> , <code>Machine</code> , and <code>Volume</code> Resources. For Resources that group other Resources (e.g., <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> or <code>System</code> Resources), this aspect provides the aggregated disk usage.
bandwidth	The amount of network traffic. Typically associated with <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> , <code>System</code> , and <code>Network</code> Resources. For <code>CloudEntryPoint</code> and <code>System</code> Resources, this aspect provides the aggregated bandwidth of all the networks under them.
inputBandwidth	The amount of input bandwidth used by the Resource. Typically associated with <code>Machine</code> , <code>NetworkPort</code> , and <code>Volume</code> Resources. For <code>Machine</code> Resources, this aspect provides the aggregated input bandwidth usage of all its network interfaces .
outputBandwidth	The amount of output bandwidth used by the Resource. Typically associated with <code>Machine</code> , <code>NetworkPort</code> , and <code>Volume</code> Resources. For <code>Machine</code> Resources, this aspect provides the aggregated output bandwidth usage of all its network interfaces.

3924 5.17.7.1 Operations

3925 This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations. Create is supported through the
 3926 `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource.

3927 5.17.8 EventLog Resource

3928 A Resource that represents a registry of Events.

3929 If an `EventLog`'s "targetResource" is deleted the `EventLog` associated with that Resource may also
 3930 be deleted. In other words, deleting a Resource (e.g., a `Machine`) may also result in the deletion of the
 3931 `EventLog` referenced from that Resource. This behavior is denoted by the `EventLog` "Linked"
 3932 capability.

3933 If an `EventLog` is deleted, all of its Events shall also be deleted.

3934 5.17.9 MeterConfigurationCollection Resource

3935 A `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource represents the Collection of `MeterConfigurations` within a
 3936 Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3937 5.17.9.1 Operations

3938 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MeterConfiguration` Resources
 3939 is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

3940 Table 52 describes the `EventLog` attributes.

3941 5.17.10 MeterConfigurationCollection Resource

3942 A `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3943 `MeterConfigurations` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3944 **5.17.10.1 Operations**

3945 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MeterConfiguration`
 3946 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
 3947 4.2.1.1.

3948 **Table 52 – EventLog attributes**

Name	EventLog			
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/EventLog			
Attribute	Type	Description		
targetResource	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the Resource to which the <code>Events</code> are related.		
Events	<i>collection [Event]</i>	A reference to the list of occurred <code>Events</code> .		
Persistence	<i>string</i>	A value that indicates the persistence of the <code>Events</code> within the <code>EventLog</code> . For instance, daily, weekly, monthly, or yearly. Events that exceed the persistence duration may be deleted.		
Summary	<unnamed structure>	A summary of all the events present in the <code>EventLog</code> when the read operation is performed, grouped by severity. Each summary attribute is an (unnamed) structure that has the following sub-attributes:		
		Attribute	Type	Description
		low	<i>integer</i>	Number of occurred <code>Events</code> with a low severity.
		medium	<i>integer</i>	Number of occurred <code>Events</code> with a medium severity.
		high	<i>integer</i>	Number of occurred <code>Events</code> with a high severity.
		critical	<i>integer</i>	Number of occurred <code>Events</code> with a critical severity.

3949 When implementing or using `EventLog`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and
 3950 semantics of its attributes as described in `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource.

3951 A `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3952 `MeterConfigurations` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3953 **5.17.10.2 Operations**

3954 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MeterConfiguration` Resources
 3955 is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.
 3956 **MeterConfigurationCollection Resource**

3957 A `MeterConfigurationCollection` Resource represents the Collection of
 3958 `MeterConfigurations` within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

3959 **5.17.10.3 Operations**

3960 This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new `MeterConfiguration`
 3961 Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause
 3962 4.2.1.1.

Table 52 as well as in the tables describing embedded Resources or related Collections.

5.17.10.4 Collections

The following clauses describe the Collection Resources EventLogs.

5.17.10.4.1 events Collection

The Resource type for each item of this Collection is "Event" as defined in clause 5.17.14.

5.17.10.5 Operations

This Resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.

5.17.11 EventLogCollection Resource

An EventLogCollection Resource represents the Collection of EventLogs within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

5.17.12 EventLogTemplate Resource

An EventLogTemplate represents the information needed to create a new EventLog. Table 53 describes the EventLogTemplate attributes.

Table 53 – EventLogTemplate attributes

Name	EventLogTemplate	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/EventLogTemplate	
Attribute	Type	Description
targetResource	<i>ref</i>	A reference to the Resource to which the EventLog shall be connected.
persistence	<i>string</i>	A value that indicates the persistence of the Events in the new EventLog. For instance, daily, weekly, monthly, or yearly. Events that exceed the persistence duration may be deleted.

When implementing or using EventLogTemplate, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics of its attributes as described in Table 53 as well as in the tables describing referred Resources or related Collections.

5.17.13 EventLogTemplateCollection Resource

An EventLogTemplateCollection Resource represents the Collection of EventLogTemplate Resources within a Provider and follows the Collection pattern defined in clause 5.5.12.

5.17.13.1 Operations

This Resource supports the Read and Update operations. Creation of new EventLogTemplate Resources is supported by the way of a POST to the "add" operation's URI as described in clause 4.2.1.1.

5.17.14 Event Resource

A Resource that represents the occurrence of an event within the managed infrastructure. Some examples of Event are:

- Machine X has been rebooted by guest OS.

Name	Event	
Type URI	http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/Event	
Attribute	Type	Description
		may be determined after <code>Event</code> creation by the Provider.

3999 NOTE There exists a legacy of several `Event` models that have been standardized or designed for various
4000 domains relevant to IT. The objective in CIMI is not to elect one particular `Event` model, but to select as top-level
4001 `Event` attributes the most immediately relevant data useful for `Event` processing in a Cloud environment.
4002 Additional `Event` data may still be represented in the variable content attribute that allows for mapping other `Event`
4003 models into a CIMI `Event`.

4004 When implementing or using `Event`, Providers and Consumers shall adhere to the syntax and semantics
4005 of its attributes as described in Table 54.

4006 Table 55 describes the "type" URIs that are defined or acknowledged by this specification. Additional
4007 types may be added by a Provider, for example to characterize external events mapped into CIMI
4008 `Events`. It is recommended that these URIs be dereferencable such that Consumers can discover a
4009 more detailed description of the type. `Event` types defined by this specification share the same base
4010 URI: http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/event/. For brevity, if the "Event Type" column in the table only shows
4011 a relative URI (e.g., `state`) it shall be appended to the end of this base URI.

4012 **Table 55 – type URIs**

Event Type	Description		
state	Events of this type report state information about CIMI run-time resources such as instances of Machines, Systems, Networks, and Volumes. This information includes reports on any change in the "state" of these Resources. The content element associated with this <code>Event</code> type has the following structure:		
	Data	Type	Description
	resName	string	The name of the Resource about the state of which is reported.
	resource	ref	The reference to the Resource about the state of which is reported. (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)
	resType	URI	URI denoting this Resource type (same as the type URI associated with the Resource type for this Resource).
	state	string	The state reported for the Resource. Shall be the same as the "state" attribute value (if any) of the run-time Resource at the time the event is generated.
	previous	string	The previous state value, if the event reports a state change.

Event Type	Description		
alarm	<p>Events of this type report errors or alarms occurring during management operations of Cloud resources. This information includes failures to provision resources, failures to fulfill requests to the CIMI interface, and any critical situation that needs be addressed in a timely manner. The content element associated with this event type has the following structure:</p>		
	Data	Type	Description
	resName	<i>string</i>	The name of the Resource associated with this alarm, if applicable.
	resource	<i>ref</i>	The reference to the Resource associated with this alarm, if applicable. (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)
	restype	<i>URI</i>	URI denoting this Resource type associated with this alarm, if applicable (same as the type URI associated with the Resource type for this Resource).
	code	<i>string</i>	An alarm code.
	detail	<i>string</i>	The detailed information associated with the alarm.

Event Type	Description																		
model	<p>Events of this type report changes in the CIMI resource model, which includes creation, modification, and destruction of Resource instances; and updates to metadata (Resource extensions, capabilities and constraints, etc.).</p> <p>The content element associated with this event type has the following structure:</p> <table><tr><th>Data</th><th>Type</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>resName</td><td>string</td><td>The name of the main model Resource affected by the modification.</td></tr><tr><td>resource</td><td>ref</td><td>The reference to the main model Resource affected by the modification. (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)</td></tr><tr><td>resType</td><td>URI</td><td>URI denoting this Resource type (same as the type URI associated with the Resource type for this Resource).</td></tr><tr><td>change</td><td>string</td><td>The kind of modification reported (create/update/delete).</td></tr><tr><td>detail</td><td>string</td><td>The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request.</td></tr></table>	Data	Type	Description	resName	string	The name of the main model Resource affected by the modification.	resource	ref	The reference to the main model Resource affected by the modification. (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)	resType	URI	URI denoting this Resource type (same as the type URI associated with the Resource type for this Resource).	change	string	The kind of modification reported (create/update/delete).	detail	string	The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request.
Data	Type	Description																	
resName	string	The name of the main model Resource affected by the modification.																	
resource	ref	The reference to the main model Resource affected by the modification. (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)																	
resType	URI	URI denoting this Resource type (same as the type URI associated with the Resource type for this Resource).																	
change	string	The kind of modification reported (create/update/delete).																	
detail	string	The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request.																	
access	<p>Events of this type keep track of all requests to access some Resource of a CIMI provider.</p> <p>The content element associated with this event type has the following structure:</p> <table><tr><th>Data</th><th>Type</th><th>Description</th></tr><tr><td>operation</td><td>string</td><td>The method or name of the operation intended for this access (for the HTTP protocol, the HTTP method for the request).</td></tr><tr><td>resource</td><td>ref</td><td>The reference of the Resource supporting the operation (for the HTTP protocol, the Resource URI or the URI associated with the operation). (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)</td></tr><tr><td>detail</td><td>string</td><td>The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request</td></tr><tr><td>initiator</td><td>string</td><td>The details identifying the request initiator, in case that information can be associated with the request.</td></tr></table>	Data	Type	Description	operation	string	The method or name of the operation intended for this access (for the HTTP protocol, the HTTP method for the request).	resource	ref	The reference of the Resource supporting the operation (for the HTTP protocol, the Resource URI or the URI associated with the operation). (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)	detail	string	The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request	initiator	string	The details identifying the request initiator, in case that information can be associated with the request.			
Data	Type	Description																	
operation	string	The method or name of the operation intended for this access (for the HTTP protocol, the HTTP method for the request).																	
resource	ref	The reference of the Resource supporting the operation (for the HTTP protocol, the Resource URI or the URI associated with the operation). (Note: This reference may become invalid because the event might outlive the Resource.)																	
detail	string	The detailed information associated with the change, typically the data for an update or creation, as used in a request																	
initiator	string	The details identifying the request initiator, in case that information can be associated with the request.																	
http://schemas.dmtf.org/cloud/audit/1.0/	<p>Events of this type represent events that have audit significance, as defined by CADF (...). This type can be subdivided further by extending the URI path (e.g., http://schemas.dmtf.org/cloud/audit/1.0/event/security, for security audit events).</p> <p>The content element associated with this event type has the same structure as the event serialization defined in CADF (DSP0262)</p>																		

4013 5.17.14.1 Operations

4014 This resource supports the Read, Update, and Delete operations.

4015 6 Security considerations

4016 There are many security mechanisms that can be used in conjunction with this specification. This
4017 specification does not mandate any particular mechanism. Providers shall provide enough information
4018 about their security mechanisms so that the Consumer can implement the necessary algorithms to
4019 successfully communicate with the Provider.

4020 An implementation may set limits on the length of attribute values it accepts. An implementation may set
4021 limits on the size of arrays it accepts. An implementation may set limits on the size of the request body or
4022 the length of request URIs it accepts. These limits may not all be advertised in the ResourceMetadata,

although this specification recommends Providers to do so. A Provider that receives a request that exceeds any of these limits, shall return a response with an appropriate standard HTTP status code.

7 Conformance

This section describes a minimal set of features that a Cloud Provider must implement to be in conformance with the specification.

This does not preclude a implementing additional features and is not exclusive of other levels of conformance that may be defined outside of this document.

The goal is to specify a basic set of features upon which implementations may rely that provides useful functionality and aids interoperability without making onerous demands on Cloud Provider implementations.

7.1 Minimal Conformance Clause

A Cloud Provider implementation is in minimal conformance with the specification if it satisfies all of the following requirements:

- It implements the **Machine** Resource specified in section 5.14 “Machine Resources and Relationships”, along with its mandatory (providerMandatory=true) common attributes, and at least the following attributes: `cpu`, `memory`, `disks`, `cpuArch`, `cpuSpeed`,
- It implements the **MachinelImage** Resource specified in section 5.14.7 “MachinelImage Resource”, along with its mandatory (providerMandatory=true) common attributes, and at least the following attributes: `imageLocation`,
- It implements the **MachineConfiguration** Resource specified in section 5.14.5 “MachineConfiguration Resource” along with its mandatory (providerMandatory=true) common attributes, and at least the following attributes: `cpu`, `memory`, `disks`, `cpuArch`, `cpuSpeed`, in addition to mandatory common attributes,
- It implements **ResourceMetadata** ResourceMetadata specified in section 5.11 “Resource Metadata”, with at least the attributes: `typeURI`, `name`, `attributes`, and all the fields in the *attribute* data type except for `consumerMandatory`. The minimal support required for ResourceMetadata is only for discovery via the CEP. No access is required from any other Resource i.e. no ResourceMetadata reference is required in any other Resource.
- It supports the creation of Machine Resources with template data passed by value, as specified in section 4.2.1.1 “Creating a new Resource”, i.e. is able to process a Machine creation request where the Machine template is passed by value. No support for the MachineTemplate Resource is required.
- It implements the **Collection** Resource as specified in section 5.5.12 “Collection” for the following Resources: ResourceMetadata, Machine, MachinelImage, MachineConfiguration, as specified in section 5.14.2 “MachineCollection Resource”, section 5.14.6 “MachineConfigurationCollection Resource”, section 5.14.8 “MachinelImageCollection Resource” and section 5.11.2 “Resource MetadataCollection Resources”,
- It implements the **CEP** Resource as specified in section 5.12 “Cloud Entry Point”, with the following collection attributes: `resourceMetadata`, `machines`, `machinelImages`, `machineConfigs`,
- For all the above Resources, it provides at least read-only access to their attributes, and at least the create and delete operations.
- It handles requests and generates responses according to protocol requirements as specified in section 4.2 “Protocol operations”.
- It handles content serialization in requests and serializes content in generated messages as specified in section 5.5 “Data types and their serialization”.

4069

ANNEX A OVF support in CIMI

4070 This annex defines how elements of an OVF descriptor are mapped to CIMI resources and their
 4071 attributes. This definition allows the import of an OVF package to create multiple CIMI resources. This is
 4072 done by specifying a reference to an OVF package in the import operation of a `SystemCollection` or
 4073 `SystemTemplateCollection` (the Media Type at that URI shall be “application/ovf”). Refer to
 4074 [DSP0243](#) for more information about OVF.

4075 Support for OVF import and export is optional for a Provider and it is an implementation choice as to how
 4076 many of the attributes in the OVF package are exposed through CIMI resources. A Provider may support
 4077 the import of OVF package for only `Systems`, only `SystemTemplates` or both. Support for the actual
 4078 import and export of an OVF package is handled by a hypervisor under the management of the CIMI
 4079 implementation, and thus the CIMI resources that are created reflect what the hypervisor did upon import
 4080 and form a “View” into the results.

4081 The import of an OVF package can be reflected in the creation of `Templates` that can be later used to
 4082 create `Systems`, `Machines` and other component `Resources`. The import of an OVF package can also
 4083 be used to directly create `Systems`, `Machines`, and other component `Resources`, bypassing the step
 4084 of creating `Templates`.

4085 Clause 5.13.5 details how to import an OVF file to create a `SystemTemplate` (and component
 4086 `Resources`). The `SystemTemplate` thus created contains a reference to a `MachineTemplate` for
 4087 every `VirtualSystem` that is defined in the OVF descriptor `VirtualSystemCollection`. Note
 4088 that CIMI currently allows `Systems` of `Systems`, so for each `VirtualSystemCollection`
 4089 encountered in a nested set of collections, a separate `SystemTemplate` is created within the parent
 4090 `SystemTemplate` with `MachineTemplates` for each of the contained `VirtualSystems` in that
 4091 `VirtualSystemCollection`.

4092 The values of the attributes for the `MachineTemplate` are taken from the
 4093 `VirtualHardwareSection` of the `VirtualSystem` description (required in OVF). If more than
 4094 one `VirtualHardwareSection` is used for a given `VirtualSystem` (allowed in OVF), the result
 4095 is implementation dependent, but the implementation might choose a `MachineTemplate` from an
 4096 existing (perhaps static) set that best matches a `VirtualHardwareSection`. Items in the
 4097 `VirtualHardwareSection` are mapped to CIMI `MachineConfiguration` properties and the
 4098 corresponding `MachineConfiguration` Resource is created and linked to from the created
 4099 `MachineTemplate` for that `VirtualSystem`.

4100 The CIMI `VolumeTemplates` are created according to the `DiskSection` of an OVF descriptor and
 4101 can be shared among more than one `VirtualSystem` (CIMI `MachineTemplates`) defined in an
 4102 OVF package. In addition, a new CIMI `MachineImage` Resource may be created from the
 4103 `DiskSection` if an `ovf:fileRef` for the virtual disk content is specified.

4104 The CIMI `NetworkTemplates` are created according to the `NetworkSection` of an OVF descriptor
 4105 along with the `Connection` elements in the `VirtualHardwareSection` elements that refer to
 4106 these named networks.

4107 Clause 0 details how to import an OVF file to create a `System` (and component `Resources`). The
 4108 `System` thus created contains a reference to a `Machine` for every `VirtualSystem` that is defined in
 4109 an OVF descriptor `VirtualSystemCollection`. Note that CIMI currently allows `Systems` of
 4110 `Systems`, so for each `VirtualSystemCollection` encountered in a nested set of collections, a
 4111 separate `System` is created within the parent `System` with `Machines` for each of the contained
 4112 `VirtualSystems` in that `VirtualSystemCollection`.

4113 The values of the attributes for the `Machine` are taken from the `VirtualHardwareSection` of the
 4114 `VirtualSystem` description (required in OVF). If more than one `VirtualHardwareSection` is
 4115 used for a given `VirtualSystem` (allowed in OVF), the result is implementation dependent. Items in
 4116 the `VirtualHardwareSection` are mapped to CIMI `MachineConfiguration` properties and
 4117 the corresponding `MachineConfiguration` Resource is created and linked to from the created
 4118 `Machine` for that `VirtualSystem`.

4119 The CIMI `Volumes` are created according to the `DiskSection` of an OVF descriptor and can be
 4120 shared among more than one `VirtualSystem` (CIMI `Machines`) defined in an OVF package. In
 4121 addition, a new CIMI `MachineImage` Resource may be created from the `DiskSection` if an
 4122 `ovf:fileRef` attribute for the virtual disk content is specified.

4123 The CIMI `Networks` are created according to the `NetworkSection` of an OVF descriptor along with
 4124 the `Connection` elements in the `VirtualHardwareSection` that refer to these named networks.

4125

4126

ANNEX B XML Schema

4127 The XML Schema for the XML serialization of the CIMI model can be found at:

4128 http://schemas.dmtf.org/cimi/2/dsp8009_1.0.xsd

4129 The schema provided does not intend to reflect every single modeling constraint and requirement
4130 specified in the model. This schema is designed to apply more broadly to any model-related serialized
4131 material found in Consumer requests as well as in Provider responses, and is intended to provide a
4132 preliminary, non-exhaustive syntactic check on these. In particular, future updates of this specification
4133 may intermix new XML elements into the Resources using the current CIMI namespace to Resources.
4134 The schema that is provided is just a starting point for those who would find it useful and it might need to
4135 be modified based on specific application's needs.

4136

ANNEX C Change log

4137

Version	Date	Who	Description
1.1.0a	08/13/2013	BrightLeaf	DMTF Draft Standard
0.0.126	10/22/2013	Jacques	Editorial changes to resolve mantis issue 2159
0.0.127	11/18/2013	Jacques	Editorial changes to resolve mantis issue 1455
0.0.128	12/17/2013	Jacques	Editorial changes to resolve mantis issue 2252
0.0.129	1/7/2014	Jacques	Part of mantis issue 1455 resolution (updates to section 5.11 – using ValueScope in ResourceMetadata) was not implemented by mistake in 0.128. Done in 0.129, see diffs in 5.11.
0.0.130	1/21/2014	Jacques	Resolving mantis issues 2300 (clarify ordering of entries in a collection) , 2301 (string sorting with \$orderby), 2302 (clarify that a Collection's "count" holds the value of the collection after filtering but before subsetting) , 2265 Not enough information why an operation is unavailable. NOTE: still need the serialization extension to be reported on every concerned resource (in addition to fix in 4.2.
0.0.131	1/22/2014	Jacques	Improved rewording on issues 2300
0.0.132	1/22/2014	Jacques	Second Improved rewording on issues 2300
0.0.133	1/22/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issue 2295 (Initial value of attribute "updated" not defined)
0.0.134	1/22/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issue 2233 (Improve the usability of the network template). Revision of resolution for issues 2300
0.0.135	1/23/2014	Jacques	revised resolutions of issues 2311, 2265, and Resolutions or 2307
0.0.136	1/23/2014	Jacques	revised resolution of issue 2311,
0.0.137	2/3/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2303 (explain dollar in CIMI query parameters), 2310 (allow Providers to limit entries in a returned collection when number of entries would be excessive) and 2313 (processing order of sorting and collection subsetting)
0.0.138	3/4/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2278: missing states and operations in Machine and Volume for capture/snapshot and restore, 2314: Section 5.11.1 "Serialization of attribute value constraints" should be removed
0.0.139	5/12/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2095: "providers should be allowed to refuse unreasonable requests", and 2275: "typo in 1.1: xml schema url, etc".
0.0.140	7/8/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2447 "Redefinition of NetworkInterfaces"
0.0.141	8/4/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2374 "using Collections for 1-to-many connections between existing resources is too complex", 2442 "Incorrect use of networkPort vs. networkNetworkPort in CIMI", 2436 "NetworkPort creation from the Network", 2240 "Requirement for Job support should be narrowed to asynchronous responses.", 2447 "Redefinition of NetworkInterfaces".
0.0.142	8/12/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2448 "ResourceMetadata's attribute's type attribute is optional in JSON, mandatory in XML." 2423 "Different treatment of the images of different Resources" - Additional fixing of cross-section referencing at several places for Collection sections (editor's discretion)
0.0.143	9/19/2014	Jacques	Some rewording for: 2374 "using Collections for 1-to-many connections between existing resources is too complex",
0.0.144	11/4/2014	Jacques	Resolution of issues:

Version	Date	Who	Description
			2393: SystemTemplate's importImage should be of type expRef, not xs:anyURI 2460: MachineTemplate uses NetworkInterface, Machine uses MachineNetworkInterface
0.0.145	16/2/2015	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2527: Type URI for CloudEntryPoint is wrong 2521: CEP collections do not scale, do not help management of owned resources. 2535: New Network Model 2506: CIMI enhancements to address Business Continuity
0.0.146	20/2/2015	Jacques	Editorial scrub on 0.145, with: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Removal of misplaced and redundant examples from 5.5.12 - Fixed examples serialization in 5.14.2 - "Old" Network UML diagram removed and temporarily replaced with the new Network outline diagram proposed by Eric. Otherwise equivalent to 0.145, with all diffs removed, but remaining comments are left in.
0.0.147	20/4/2015	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2564: XML serialization of arrays and lists of elements is lacking container element. 2566: Templates need be able to refer to and integrate "run-time" Resources.
0.0.148	26/5/2015	Jacques	Resolution of issues: 2565: ResourceMetadata scope needs to apply per Resource as well. 2563: Need a simpler rule for what Resources show in CEP collections (latest proposal: reverse to the original single option of CEP=exhaustive catalog of resources.)
0.0.149	28/5/2015	Jacques	Completed resolution of issue: 2565: ResourceMetadata scope needs to apply per Resource as well. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Added definitions of the new "attribute constraints" nomenclature, in section 5.3 (replacing the old ones) - Converted the remaining cases of old "attribute constraints" into the new proposed constraints nomenclature.
0.0.150	22/6/2015	Jacques	Updated resolution of issue: 2565: ResourceMetadata scope needs to apply per Resource as well. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - Reworded some of the constraints definitions (5.3) based on feedback in recent meeting 6/2. Editorial: Grouped serialization rules in contiguous sections (i.e. 5.4, 5.5). Formerly 5.1 moved to 5.4 and is retitled "Serialization of Resources", it also introduces section 5.5. (this is in anticipation of #2570)
0.0.151	26/10/2015	Jacques	Resolution of issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • #2570: Only JSON and XML serialization rules should remain in DSP0263, the actual Resources serializations should be inPrimer • #2586: Need a more generic definition for SystemServices, and clarify relationship to NetworkService if any. • #2593: Operation to connect two resources may require more than just inserting a Resource reference into another

Version	Date	Who	Description
			Resource's collection
0.0.152	4/1/2016	Jacques	Resolution of issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • #2592: Conformance clause missng for CIMI. • #2549: UML diagrams for groups of resources are not up-to-date
0.0.153	27/1/2016	Jacques	Resolution of issues: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • #2617: "properties" common attribute appears to be redundant with resourceMetadata • #2618: "Job" Resource has redundant parentJob attribute • #2619: outdated reference: RFC2616 which should be updated to RFC7230 • #2592: Conformance clause missng for CIMI.(reworded)
0.0.154	29/2/2016	Jacques	Resolution of editorial review comments, for next WIP:
2.0.0d	2016-03-22		Work in Progress version

4138

Bibliography

4139 DMTF Standard: *Cloud Infrastructure Management Interface (CIMI) Model and RESTful HTTP-based*
4140 *Protocol* specification V1.0 (DSP0263)

4141 http://dmtof.org/sites/default/files/standards/documents/DSP0263_1.0.0.pdf

4142 DMTF Standard: *Cloud Infrastructure Management Interface (CIMI) Model and RESTful HTTP-based*
4143 *Protocol* specification V1.1 (DSP0263)

4144 https://members.dmtf.org/apps/org/workgroup/cmwg/download.php/73648/DSP0263_1.1.0b_RC2.pdf